仁愛

一个专业的基础教育
课程教材研究机构
http://www.renai-edu.com

ISBN 978-7-110-08573-8
9 787110 085738 4 9>

定价：9.90元
价格批准文号：闽发改服价［2021］380号
价格投诉举报电话：12315

绿色印刷产品

www.cspbooks.com.cn

义务教育教科书 英语

教育部审定 2013

义 务 教 育 教 科 书

英 语

Project English

九年级 上册

九年级 上册

科学普及出版社
POPULAR SCIENCE PRESS

义务教育教科书

英语

Project English

九年级 上册

北京市仁爱教育研究所 编著

主 编 王德春
Jim Greenlaw (加拿大)
副主编 杨晓钰
编 者 Robert White (加拿大)
Martin McDonald (加拿大)
杨晓钰 周 澜 王惠静
张 翼 万 普

科学普及出版社

·北 京·

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

英语．九年级．上册 / 北京市仁爱教育研究所编著．－北京 ：科学普及出版社，2014.7 (2021.6重印)
义务教育教科书
ISBN 978-7-110-08573-8

Ⅰ．①英… Ⅱ．①北… Ⅲ．①英语课－初中－教材
Ⅳ．①G634.411

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2014)第058779号

策划编辑 徐扬科　许　倩　　**责任编辑** 林　然
责任印制 徐　飞

是仁爱版教材的商标

仁爱版教材推广及服务中心电话
4008100168　010-82676936　13911468451

义务教育教科书

英 语

九年级　上册

北京市仁爱教育研究所　编著
*
科学普及出版社
（北京市海淀区中关村南大街16号）
邮政编码：100081
福建新华发行（集团）有限责任公司发行
北京利丰雅高长城印刷有限公司印刷
*
787mm×1092mm　16开　10印张　200千字
2014年7月第1版　2021年6月第80次印刷

ISBN 978-7-110-08573-8/G·3623

定价：9.90 元

著作权所有，请勿擅用本书制作各类出版物，违者必究。
如有质量问题，影响阅读，请与北京市仁爱教育研究所联系调换。
地址：北京市海淀区北四环西路68号左岸工社12层　邮编：100080
电话：4008100168　010-82676936　13911468415
网址：http://www.renai-edu.com　邮箱：editor@renai-edu.com

前　言

亲爱的同学们：

你们好！欢迎你们学习使用仁爱版初中英语教材，与我们共同开启初中英语学习的大门！

仁爱版初中英语教材是由加拿大英语专家Jim Greenlaw博士和北京市仁爱教育研究所数十位英语专家及中国最优秀的英语教师依据教育部《义务教育英语课程标准（2011年版）》，针对中国5000多万初中学生的英语学习现状编写而成的初中英语教材，它将陪伴你们度过绚丽斑斓的初中生活。

通过七、八年级的学习，你们已经具备了一定的英语语言知识和技能。在九年级阶段，你们的综合语言运用能力将得到进一步的提升。在本册教材中，共有四个话题与大家分享:家乡的变化、环境与环保、英语学习和新奇的科学技术。新的学期到了，康康和他的小伙伴儿们各自在假期做了哪些有意义的事情呢？简参加了环保小组，你们想知道如何成为一名环保者吗？康康他们班在班会上交流了一些学习英语的好方法，都是哪些方法呢？迈克尔和简参观了科学博物馆，他们都了解了哪些发明呢？通过本册教材的学习，你们就会得到答案了。相信你们会乐意融入到他们的学习、生活中，并逐步地学会用英语谈论这些话题；你们还将有很多机会参与到双人或小组活动中去，与同伴们一起用英语完成任务，如：角色表演、制作海报、评价学习等有趣的活动，并在每个话题结束时表演或展示自己的作品。

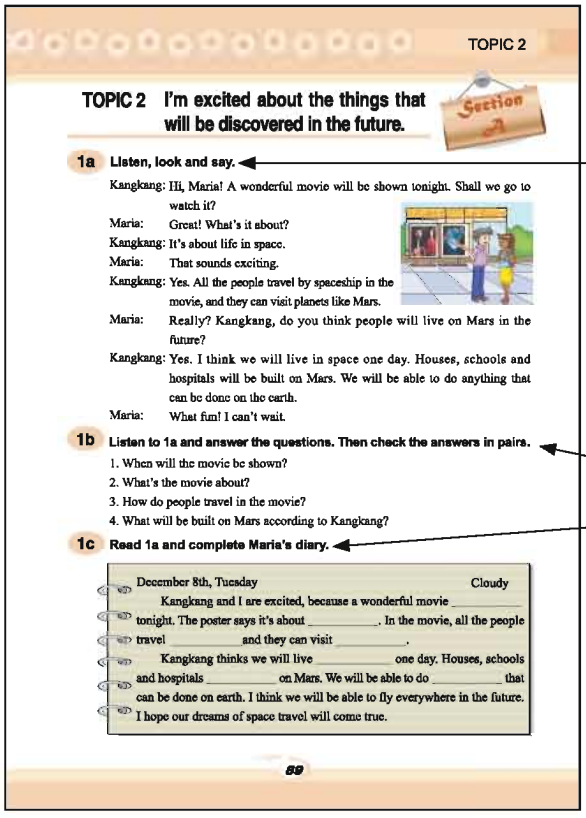
伴随这些有趣的故事和活动，你们将学到一些比前几册教材里更为复杂的语言结构，如现在完成时、被动语态和定语从句等。这些知识会使你们能运用更丰富的英语语言来进行表达。教材的语音学习部分将着重展现语篇中的语音，帮助你们运用七、八年级所学的语音知识进行综合的训练。你们熟悉的金钥匙会依然给出一些有效的学习方法。

此外，由于我国现阶段还有少部分农村地区因**师资欠缺**、**开课不足**等原因使该部分地区的孩子们的**英语基础十分薄弱**，为此**我们在七年级上册设计并调整了第一单元作为预备学习单元，供你们选用**。

同学们，希望你们能积极热情地参与教材中的活动、享受英语学习的乐趣，使你们的听说读写能力得到全面的提高！我们相信只要认真地将整套六册仁爱版初中英语教材学完，你们都能达到教育部《义务教育英语课程标准（2011年版）》的五级英语水平要求，并能满怀信心地迎接未来每一天的挑战。

Main Characters in the Book

Guide to Project English
使用指南



TOPIC 2

TOPIC 2 I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

Section A

1a **Listen, look and say.**

Kangkang: Hi, Maria! A wonderful movie will be shown tonight. Shall we go to watch it?

Maria: Great! What's it about?

Kangkang: It's about life in space.

Maria: That sounds exciting.

Kangkang: Yes. All the people travel by spaceship in the movie, and they can visit planets like Mars.

Maria: Really? Kangkang, do you think people will live on Mars in the future?

Kangkang: Yes. I think we will live in space one day. Houses, schools and hospitals will be built on Mars. We will be able to do anything that can be done on the earth.

Maria: What fun! I can't wait.

1b **Listen to 1a and answer the questions. Then check the answers in pairs.**

1. When will the movie be shown?
2. What's the movie about?
3. How do people travel in the movie?
4. What will be built on Mars according to Kangkang?

1c **Read 1a and complete Maria's diary.**

December 8th, Tuesday Cloudy

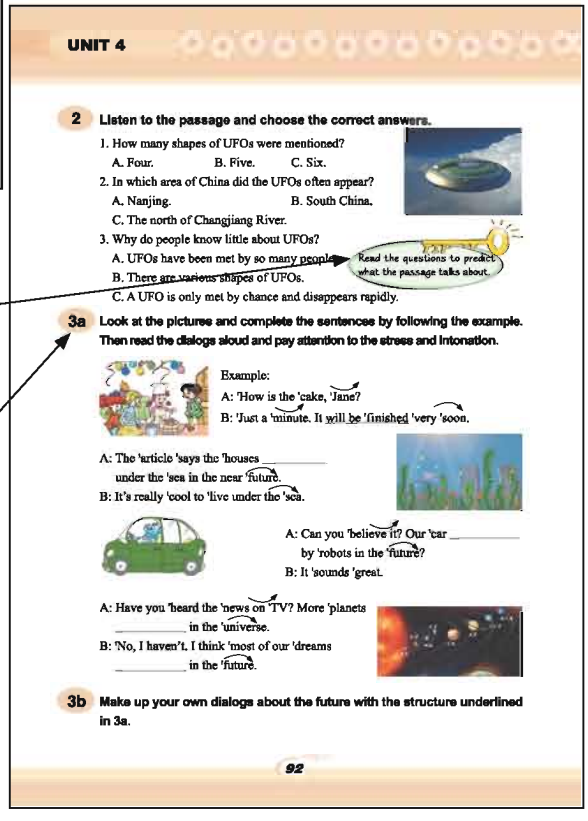
Kangkang and I are excited, because a wonderful movie _____ tonight. The poster says it's about _____. In the movie, all the people travel _____ and they can visit _____.

Kangkang thinks we will live _____ one day. Houses, schools and hospitals _____ on Mars. We will be able to do _____ that can be done on earth. I think we will be able to fly everywhere in the future. I hope our dreams of space travel will come true.

89

Section A 和 Section B 以对话形式在真实的语境中呈现新的语言材料，为语言的输出做准备。

在看图理解的基础上听懂对话，通过不同的听力活动，帮助学生完成对新材料的理解，提高其听说能力。



UNIT 4

2 **Listen to the passage and choose the correct answers.**

1. How many shapes of UFOs were mentioned?
   A. Four. B. Five. C. Six.
2. In which area of China did the UFOs often appear?
   A. Nanjing. B. South China.
   C. The north of Changjiang River.
3. Why do people know little about UFOs?
   A. UFOs have been met by so many people.
   B. There are various shapes of UFOs.
   C. A UFO is only met by chance and disappears rapidly.

Read the questions to predict what the passage talks about.

3a **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences by following the example. Then read the dialogs aloud and pay attention to the stress and intonation.**

Example:
A: 'How is the 'cake, 'Jane?
B: 'Just a 'minute. It will be 'finished 'very 'soon.

A: The 'article 'says the 'houses _____ under the 'sea in the near 'future.
B: It's really 'cool to 'live under the 'sea.

A: Can you 'believe it? Our 'car _____ by 'robots in the 'future?
B: It 'sounds 'great.

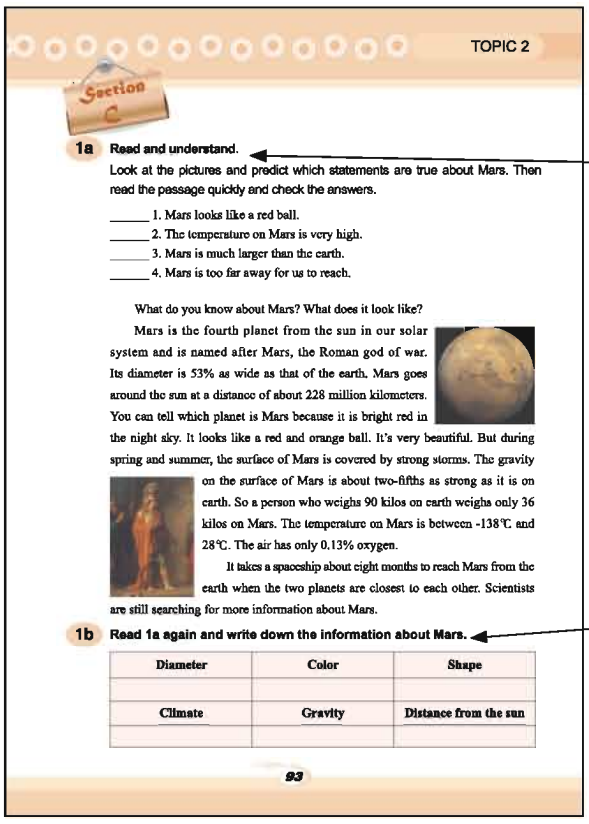
A: Have you 'heard the 'news on 'TV? More 'planets _____ in the 'universe.
B: 'No, I haven't. I think 'most of our 'dreams _____ in the 'future.

3b **Make up your own dialogs about the future with the structure underlined in 3a.**

92

帮助学生养成良好的学习习惯，形成科学的学习方法，从而提高学习效率，成为真正的自主学习者。

以各单元所学内容为基础，通过各种语音活动帮助学生应用所学语音知识，养成自然规范的语音语调，为有效的口语交际打下良好的基础。



TOPIC 2

Section C

1a **Read and understand.**

Look at the pictures and predict which statements are true about Mars. Then read the passage quickly and check the answers.

_____ 1. Mars looks like a red ball.
_____ 2. The temperature on Mars is very high.
_____ 3. Mars is much larger than the earth.
_____ 4. Mars is too far away for us to reach.

What do you know about Mars? What does it look like?

Mars is the fourth planet from the sun in our solar system and is named after Mars, the Roman god of war. Its diameter is 53% as wide as that of the earth. Mars goes around the sun at a distance of about 228 million kilometers. You can tell which planet is Mars because it is bright red in the night sky. It looks like a red and orange ball. It's very beautiful. But during spring and summer, the surface of Mars is covered by strong storms. The gravity on the surface of Mars is about two-fifths as strong as it is on earth. So a person who weighs 90 kilos on earth weighs only 36 kilos on Mars. The temperature on Mars is between -138℃ and 28℃. The air has only 0.13% oxygen.

It takes a spaceship about eight months to reach Mars from the earth when the two planets are closest to each other. Scientists are still searching for more information about Mars.

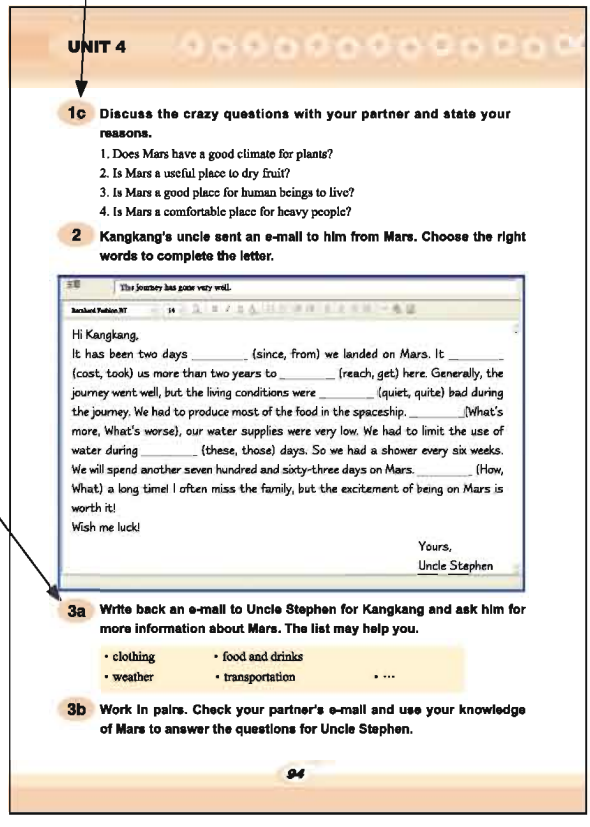
1b **Read 1a again and write down the information about Mars.**

Diameter	Color	Shape
Climate	**Gravity**	**Distance from the sun**

93

精选题材丰富的阅读材料及形式多样的读前活动。

通过各种形式的阅读活动，帮助学生实现课程标准要求的各种阅读技能目标，以及掌握基本的阅读技能，为他们成为高效的阅读者打下良好的基础。



UNIT 4

1c **Discuss the crazy questions with your partner and state your reasons.**

1. Does Mars have a good climate for plants?
2. Is Mars a useful place to dry fruit?
3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live?
4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people?

2 **Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mail to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter.**

The journey has gone very well.

Hi Kangkang,

It has been two days _____ (since, from) we landed on Mars. It _____ (cost, took) us more than two years to _____ (reach, get) here. Generally, the journey went well, but the living conditions were _____ (quiet, quite) bad during the journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. _____ (What's more, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of water during _____ (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. We will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. _____ (How, What) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is worth it!

Wish me luck!

Yours,
Uncle Stephen

3a **Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for more information about Mars. The list may help you.**

- clothing
- food and drinks
- weather
- transportation
- …

3b **Work in pairs. Check your partner's e-mail and use your knowledge of Mars to answer the questions for Uncle Stephen.**

94

贯彻过程性写作理念，以意义表达为核心目标，同时关注语言形式的使用。体现综合技能训练的理念，将听、说、读的技能与写作有机结合，并结合单元相关话题的写作活动，提高目标语的写作能力。

TOPIC 2

Section 2

Read through Sections A-C and understand the underlined parts.

Grammar

Passive Voice (III)

A wonderful movie will be shown tonight.
I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

Functions

We will be able to do anything that can be done on the earth.
I think you should first master some basic computer skills.
Let's work hard. Then our dreams will be realized.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a **Read the passage and choose a proper title.**

1. Is There Life Out There? 2. Our Planet 3. The Stars at Night

Scientists think that there has been life on earth for millions of years. However, we haven't found life on other planets yet. The earth is a planet and it goes around the sun. And there are seven other planets that also go around the sun. The sun and its planets are called the solar system. The solar system is a small part of the universe.

Scientists have launched many spaceships to explore other planets in the solar system. Some spaceships have gone beyond the solar system. However, no one has discovered any life in space yet.

Why has no one from other planets sent us a message? Have they tried to send information to us? With so many stars in space, are we alone, or is there life on other planets in space?

95

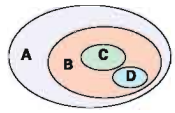
引导学生通过完成任务的方式归纳本话题所学知识，培养他们定期自主复习所学内容的学习习惯，形成一定的学习策略。

通过题材丰富的泛读文章，进一步扩大学生的阅读量，同时拓展文化视野，进而提高其跨文化交际能力。

以合作探究活动形式，促使学生通过体验、实践、讨论、合作、探究等方式，综合运用本话题的语言知识和技能解决现实生活中的一些实际问题，使学生能够用英语做事情。

UNIT 4

1b **Match the letters in the picture with their names according to 1a.**



( ) 1. the solar system
( ) 2. the earth
( ) 3. the universe
( ) 4. the sun

2 **A spaceship will be sent out to find aliens in outer space. A letter will be put on the spaceship to introduce our earth. Discuss in groups and write a short introduction of the earth. Then present it to the class.**

3 **If aliens are found in the near future, what changes will happen to people on the earth? Discuss in groups and make a list of all the possibilities.**

Example:
More aliens will be found with the help of our new friends.
Students will be sent to their planet to learn their language.
...

Project

Reporting on the Celestial Body You Like to Live on

1. Divide the class into three groups: Mars, the moon, the earth.

Mars

Moon

Earth

2. Discuss the life there, such as clothing, food and drink, transportation ...
3. Choose one student in each group to introduce the information to the class.
4. Think about which planet you would like to live on and give a report to the class.

96

Scope and Sequence

Unit/Title	Topic	Function
1 The Changing World	1. Our country has developed rapidly. Page 1	Talking about duration Expressing emotions
	2. The population in developing countries is growing faster. Page 9	Making comparison Talking about cause and effect
	3. The world has changed for the better. Page 17	Talking about suggestions Telling others what one has read
Review of Unit 1 25		
2 Saving the Earth	1. Pollution has caused too many problems. Page 27	Making comparison Talking about health condition
	2. All these problems are very serious. Page 35	Talking about cause and effect
	3. What can we do at home to protect the environment? Page 43	Talking about ability Giving advice
Review of Units 1–2 51		

Structure	Pronunciation	Vocabulary	Strategy
Present perfect (I) *have/has done ...* *have/has been to ...* *have/has gone to ...*	Intonation	Words for leisure activities Words for communication	Paying attention to the pronunciation Guessing words Organizing your thoughts
Present perfect (II) *already, yet, just, ever, never*	Intonation	Words related to the population Words for numbers	Developing listening skill Analyzing expressions
Present perfect (III) *for, since*	Stress, weak form, liaison and pause	Names of organizations Words for social services	Using imagery Paying attention to the pronunciation
Simple past and present perfect	Stress, liaison and pause	Names of different kinds of pollution Words to describe causes of pollution	Using topic sentences
Indefinite pronoun and adverb	Weak form, liaison and intonation	Words for natural resources Words to describe pollution	Listening for the main idea Taking notes
Compound sentence *or, and, while, but*	Stress, liaison, intonation and incomplete plosion	Words for environmental protection Words for energy	Remembering English idioms Paying attention to the pronunciation

Scope and Sequence

Unit/Title	Topic	Function
3 English Around the World	**1. English is widely spoken throughout the world.** Page 55	Talking about future intention Expressing wishes
	2. Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures. Page 63	Expressing happiness, encouragement and reassurance Making polite requests
	3. Could you give us some advice on how to learn English well? Page 71	Talking about the problems in communication Talking about how to learn English
Review of Unit 3 79		
4 Amazing Science	**1. When was it invented?** Page 81	Expressing hope and wish Talking about the events in the past
	2. I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future. Page 89	Talking about the events in the future Expressing possibility and impossibility
	3. China is the third nation that sent a person into space. Page 97	Talking about the events in the past and expressing hope Giving advice and expressing thanks
Review of Units 3–4 105		
Appendices 109		

Structure	Pronunciation	Vocabulary	Strategy
Passive voice (Ⅰ) *am/is/are+past participle*	Stress and weak form	Names of countries Words for English use	Discovering a rule Finding the information you need
Expressing the future by present continuous	Liaison, pause and intonation	Names of animals and plants Words for gestures	Using gestures Paying attention to the pronunciation
How/Wh- + to do Word formation: *Derivations* *Compounds*	Stress and liaison	Words to describe the way of English learning	Finding out about English learning
Passive voice(Ⅱ) *was/were+past participle*	Vowels Stress and intonation	Words for materials Words to express inventions	Focusing on meanings in communication Writing a definition passage
Passive voice (Ⅲ) *will+be+past participle*	Stress and intonation	Words about Mars Words for space description	Listening for key words Predicting by questions
Attributive clauses(Ⅰ) *that, which, who*	Pause, weak form and intonation	Words about the development of spaceship Words about the use of computers	Using what you already know to predict Using formulas

UNIT 1 The Changing World

TOPIC 1 Our country has developed rapidly.

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

(*After a long holiday, Kangkang is happy to see his friends.*)

Kangkang: Hi, Jane! Did you have a good summer holiday?

Jane: Yes. What about you?

Kangkang: Not bad. Rita, you have just come back from your hometown. How was your trip?

Rita: Great! I went to many places near my home in India. Great changes have taken place there and my hometown has become more and more beautiful. Where have you been, Jane?

Jane: I have been to Mount Huang with my parents. It's a beautiful place. But there were so many people that I couldn't find a good place to take photos. And where have you been, Kangkang?

Kangkang: I have been to an English summer school to improve my English. By the way, where's Maria?

Rita: She has gone to Cuba to be a volunteer and she will be back tomorrow. Listen! There goes the bell.

1b Listen to 1a and complete the table.

Rita	has been to	many _____ near her home in _____	her _____ has become more and more _____
Jane		Mount _____ with her _____	it is beautiful but there were too many _____
Kangkang		an English _____ school	to _____ his English
Maria	has gone to	_____ to be a volunteer	and she will be back _____

1c Retell the main information of 1a based on 1b.

2a **Listen to the conversation and fill in the blanks. Then practice it with your partner.**

Michael: Hi, Maria, long time no see. Where _____ you _____?
Maria: I _____ to Cuba to be a volunteer.
Michael: Really? It must be fun.
Maria: Yeah, I enjoyed the work. Do you know where Jane _____ for her summer holiday?
Michael: She _____ to Mount Huang for vacation.
Maria: Have you seen her this morning?
Michael: Oh, she _____ to the library.
Maria: I will go and find her. By the way, where is Kangkang?
Michael: He _____ to the library, too. Let's go and find them.

2b **Work in groups and find out the differences between *have/has been to* and *have/has gone to*.**

3 **Look at the pictures and make conversations with your partner with *have/has been/gone to*.**

Example:
A: Where have you been?
B: I have been to *Mount Huang*. How about *Maria*?
A: *She* has gone to *Cuba*. *She* is still there and will be back *tomorrow*.

Mount Huang Cuba

Australia Africa

the Great Wall Hangzhou

London America

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

Kangkang: Hi, Maria! I haven't seen you for a long time. You took part in some volunteer activities during the summer holidays, didn't you?

Maria: Yes. I was a volunteer in a disabled children's home.

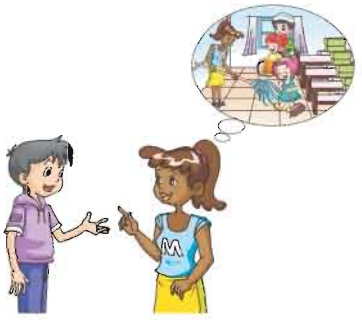
Kangkang: Cool! Did you clean rooms for the disabled children?

Maria: Yes, I did.

Kangkang: Did you feed them?

Maria: No, I didn't. But I cooked for them.

Kangkang: What a wonderful experience!



Maria: Yes, it really was. I've learnt a lot from it. I think it makes me happy to help others.

Kangkang: How interesting! Have you been to any other place?

Maria: No, I haven't. Though I had no time to travel, I still felt very happy. What about you?

Kangkang: You're so kind. I have been to an English summer school. I made some new friends there. We also put on funny shows for a group of old people in a community.

Maria: Great! To help others makes us happy.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

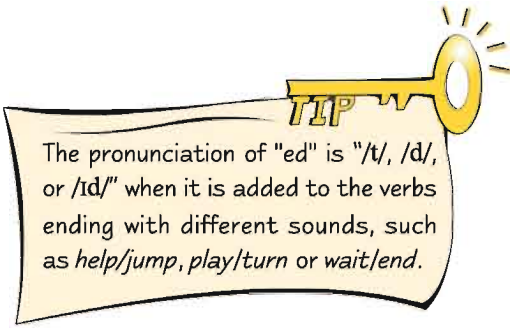
1. Maria helped the disabled children to clean the rooms and fed them. ( )
2. Maria thinks her experience as a volunteer was wonderful. ( )
3. Maria felt very happy because she helped others. ( )
4. Kangkang has been to a summer school to help the old. ( )
5. Kangkang has made some new friends in the English summer school. ( )

1c Read 1a and complete the following passage.

Both Maria and Kangkang have done something meaningful. Maria has _____ some volunteer activities to help some disabled _____. She _____ a lot from it, and she said _____ others made her happy. Kangkang _____ an English summer school. He _____ some new friends there, and they also _____ funny shows for a group of old people in a _____.

2a Fill in the blanks with the different forms of the verbs. Read them aloud and pay attention to the underlined parts. Then listen and check.

clean	cleaned	cleaned
jump	jumped	_____
_____	chatted	chatted
fly	_____	flown
do	did	_____
am/is/are	was/were	_____
shut	_____	shut
...	...	...



2b Listen and read the example sentences aloud, paying attention to the pronunciation and intonation. Then make up more based on the table.

Example:

A: Has Ann ever cleaned rooms?
B: Yes, she has.

A: Has Ann chatted online?
B: No, she hasn't.

Activity / Name	clean rooms	jump rope	chat online	fly a kite	do farm work	...
Ann	☺	☺	☹	☺	☹	
Zhang Yang	☹	☺	☺	☹	☺	
...						

2c Work in groups and survey your group members about their vacation experiences based on 2b. Then report it to the class.

You may begin like this:

Jane has done some farm work … _____

_____

_____

Section C

1a Read and understand.

Look at the pictures of Beijing in the past and at present. Then guess the meaning of each word and the main idea of the text.

TIP

When reading a passage, try to figure out the meaning of each new word by looking at the pictures or the context of the word.

roads — narrow

houses — small, crowded

communications — simple, slow

ring roads — wide

houses — comfortable

communications — various, quick, easy

Changes in Beijing

I'm Kangkang. For this report I have interviewed my grandmother. She has lived in Beijing for more than forty years. She has seen the changes in Beijing herself.

In the 1960s, the living conditions in the city were poor. The roads were narrow and there weren't many ring roads. Big families were crowded into small houses. Many families couldn't get enough food. Few children had the chance to receive a good education. People had little money to see a doctor. And there were few hospitals. People kept in touch with their friends and relatives far away mainly by letter or telegram.

China has developed rapidly since the reform and opening-up. More and more ring roads and subways have appeared and buildings in Beijing are becoming taller and brighter. People's living conditions have improved a lot. And there are more kinds of food and clothes to satisfy people's needs. Children can study not only in modern schools but also on the Internet. People can enjoy good medical care. What's more, communications are becoming easier and quicker — people can use telephones, cellphones, fax machines and the Internet.

Beijing has made rapid progress and it has already succeeded in hosting the 2008 Olympic Games. I think it is important to remember the past, live in the present and dream about the future.

1b Read 1a and match the words and phrases with their meanings.

1. communication
2. keep in touch
3. far away
4. progress
5. rapid
6. satisfy

A. not near
B. the course of improving or developing
C. way of sending information
D. to make sb. pleased by doing or giving them what they want
E. write or phone or visit very often
F. happening very quickly or in a short time

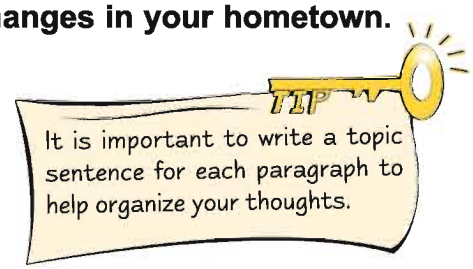
1c Read 1a again and complete the tasks.

1. Underline the topic sentence of each paragraph.
2. List four changes in Beijing.

1)_____ 3)_____
2)_____ 4)_____

2 Work in groups and talk about the changes in your hometown. Then report it to the class.

1. What was/were ... like in the past?
2. What has happened to ... nowadays?
3. What will ... be like in the future?



3 Write a short passage on the topic *Changes in ...* You should write its situation in the past and at present based on 2.

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and understand the underlined parts.

Grammar

Present Perfect (I)

I have been to Mount Huang with my parents.

She has gone to Cuba to be a volunteer.

China has developed rapidly since the reform and opening-up.

It has already succeeded in hosting the 2008 Olympic Games.

Great changes have taken place there ...

I haven't seen you for a long time.

Have you been to any other place? Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

Functions

There goes the bell.

What a wonderful experience!

Though I had no time to travel, I still felt very happy.

To help others makes us happy.

I think it is important to remember the past, live in the present and dream about the future.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

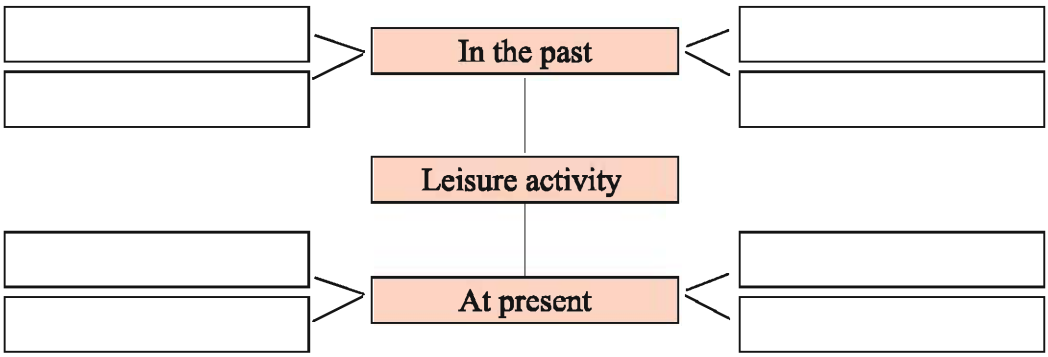
1a **Read the following passage and complete the table on Page 8.**

Changing Leisure Activities

Leisure activities are the kinds of things people like to do to relax and enjoy themselves when they are not working or going to school. Leisure activities play an important part in people's lives. In the past, there were few leisure activities. Children often got together to play hide-and-seek. People met to play cards or chess in the street. Few people had chances to travel. Watching operas and listening to the radio were the main activities in their spare time.

Since the reform and opening-up, Chinese people have had more time to spend on various kinds of leisure activities. A lot of people love both to play and to watch team sports like basketball or football. Many people stay at home having a rest,

reading books and watching TV. Young people like to play games on computers or chat on the Internet. In recent years, more and more people love to travel during vacation. They go to visit some places of interest, and some people even make a tour abroad to see the world. Chinese people now have the time and chance to do more kinds of leisure activities.



1b **Read 1a and answer the following questions.**

1. When do people usually have their leisure activities?
2. How many kinds of leisure activities do you know? Give some examples.
3. What are your favorite leisure activities?

Project

Making a Poster About Changing Leisure Activities

1. Leisure activities for children have changed a lot. Look at the table below and talk about them in groups.

In the past	Now
watch movies in the open air	watch movies at home
fly paper planes	fly model planes
roll iron rings	go roller skating
...	...

2. Try to find out more changes in leisure activities and their pictures. You can ask your parents or grandparents for help if necessary.

3. Make a poster to show the changes with the topic *Different Times, Different Leisure Activities*. Choose the best one in each group and display it on the wall.

TOPIC 2 The population in developing countries is growing faster.

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

Maria: Hello, Michael. I have just called you, but you weren't in. Where have you been?

Michael: I have just been to a shopping center with Kangkang. I've never been there before, but I don't want to go there any more.

Maria: Why not?

Michael: Because there were too many people. We got lost and couldn't find each other.

Maria: Bad luck! Have you found him yet?

Michael: No, he has probably gone home. Let's call him up now. I really hate going to a place like that.

Maria: So do I.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. Michael has just been to a shopping center. ( )
2. Michael hates to go to the place because he couldn't buy anything. ( )
3. Kangkang and Michael went back home together. ( )
4. Maria likes going there. ( )

1c Read 1a and correct the five mistakes in the passage.

TIP

Correcting a passage is a good way to develop writing skills.

Michael and Kangkang have just gone to a shopping center. They have never been there before, but they don't want to go there some more because there were such many people that they couldn't find each other. Michael hasn't found Kangkang already. Maybe Kangkang has been home already. Both Michael and Maria hate going to a place like that.

1. been
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

2 **A. Look at the pictures and listen to the conversation. Then tick the places Steve has visited.**

☐ shopping center ☐ cinema ☐ central park ☐ department store

B. Listen again and fill in the blanks. Then practice the conversation with your partner.

(*Steve and Helen are talking on the phone.*)

Steve: I have just been living here for a few days. Could you tell me some interesting places around here?

Helen: Have you _____ been to the new shopping center?

Steve: No. I've _____ been there before. But I've _____ been to a department store.

Helen: Then you can go there to do some shopping. By the way, have you _____ been to the cinema nearby?

Steve: Yes, I've _____ watched a movie there. It is wonderful.

Helen: Have you been to the central park?

Steve: No, I haven't been there _____.

Helen: Then, you can have a walk there.

Steve: Thank you.

3 **Read and understand the first sentence. Then complete the second one.**

1. I always lose my way in New York.
   I always _____ in New York.
2. Yesterday Maria made a telephone call to Michael, but he wasn't at home.
   Yesterday Maria _____ Michael _____, but he wasn't _____.
3. Mr. Brown is such a kind teacher that we all like him.
   This teacher is so _____ that we all like him.
4. I don't like to go to such a crowded place.
   I _____ going to a crowded place _____ this.

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

(*Kangkang is reading a report on population in the newspaper.*)

Kangkang: Wow! What a large population!

Maria: What?

Kangkang: Look, it says the world has a population of 7.2 billion. And it is increasing by 90 million every year.

Maria: Mmm, that's really a lot. Which country has the largest population?

Kangkang: China has the largest population. It has already reached 1.37 billion, and India is second with 1.31 billion.

Maria: What's the population of the USA?

Kangkang: 321 million.

Maria: Oh, I see. It shows that the population in developing countries is larger than that in developed countries, doesn't it?

Kangkang: Yes. What's more, the population in developing countries is growing faster.

Maria: So it is. The population problem has become more serious in developing countries.

Kangkang: Luckily, China has already carried out some policies to solve the problem.

1b Listen to 1a and match the information.

1. the world	2. China	3. India	4. the USA

A. 321 million	B. 7.2 billion	C. 1.37 billion	D. 1.31 billion

1c Read 1a and fill in the blanks.

The world has a population of 7.2 billion and it is increasing by _____ every year. _____ has the largest population. It has already reached _____ and India is _____ with 1.31 billion. The population in developing countries is _____ and is growing _____ than that in developed countries. Luckily, our country has carried out some policies to _____ the problem.

2 Listen and read the numbers, paying special attention to the intonation. Then read the other numbers with your partner.

TIP

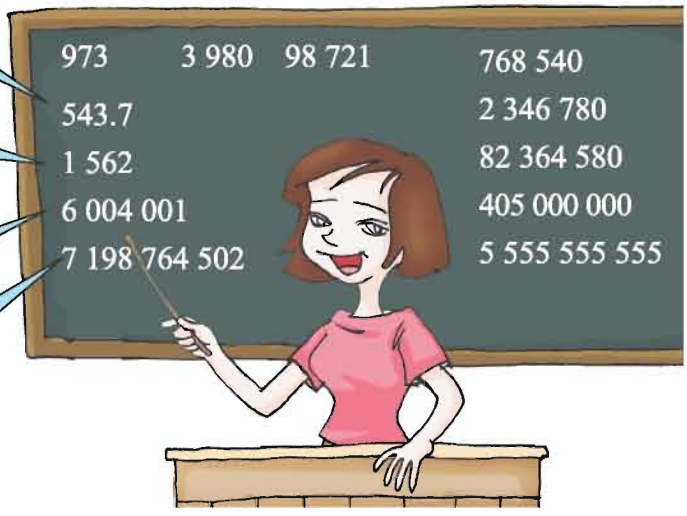
First, try to separate the number in groups of three from right to left. Then read it in order from billion to million and thousand.

five hundred and forty-three point seven

one thousand, five hundred and sixty-two

six million, four thousand and one

seven billion, one hundred and ninety-eight million, seven hundred and sixty-four thousand, five hundred and two



3 Work in groups and discuss the population of the world. The following chart and questions may help you.

1. Which of these 5 countries has the largest/smallest population? What's the population of it?
2. What can you tell from the population in developing countries and in developed countries?
3. What problems does the large population cause?
4. What measures do you think should be taken to solve the population problem?

Section C

1a Read and understand.

1.Before you read the passage, discuss the questions with your partner.

1) Why did China carry out the one-child policy?

2) What social problems do you think China's large population has caused?

2.Write the title of the passage.

_____

In 2015, the world's population was about 7.2 billion. More than four billion people live in Asia now. That's more than half of the world's population.

China has the largest population in the world, and about one fifth of the people in the world live in China. Because of the large population, there is less living space for each family. And it is difficult for lots of people to find jobs. At the same time, the large population has caused many other difficulties for the whole nation. For example, it is hard for China to supply water and energy to satisfy people's daily needs. Most cities are more crowded than before, and the traffic is much heavier. Natural environments are becoming worse and worse. The large population has been a serious problem.

So far, our government has taken many measures to solve the population problem. One was known as the one-child policy. It worked well in controlling China's population. Thanks to the policy, China is developing quickly and people's living conditions are improving rapidly. However, the population problem is still serious in China. We still have a long way to go.

1b Read 1a and match the main idea with each paragraph.

1. _____ Paragraph 1
2. _____ Paragraph 2
3. _____ Paragraph 3

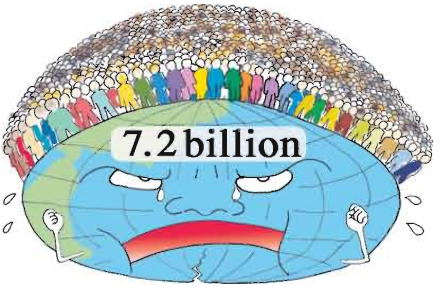
A. the measures to deal with the problems
B. the world's and Asia's population
C. the problems caused by large population

1c **Read 1a again and complete the table.**

Population of China	_____
Social problem	less _____ fewer _____ opportunities less _____ and _____ crowded _____ heavy _____ _____ natural environments
Government measure	_____

2 **Complete the following passage with the correct forms of the given words or phrases.**

grow	reach	have	find	work	become	face	carry out



Every minute, about 261 babies are born in the world. That means people have to _____ food for about 375 840 newborn babies every day. The world's population _____ very fast. It has _____ one of the biggest social problems today.

China _____ the largest population in the world. There are about 1.37 billion people in China. It has _____ 20 percent of the world's population. China has _____ some policies to solve the population problem, and these policies have _____ well. But China still _____ a serious population problem.

3a **Work in groups and search for the information about the following questions. Then share your idea with your group members.**

1. How do you think we can get more living space?
2. What should the government do to offer more job opportunities?
3. Water and energy are less and less. What should we do to deal with it?
4. The traffic in cities is much heavier than before. How can we solve the problem?

3b **Write a short passage of three paragraphs based on 3a.**

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Present Perfect (II)

I have _____ called you. I've _____ been there before.

It has _____ reached 1.37 billion, ...

Have you found him _____? Have you _____ been to the cinema nearby?

Functions

I really _____ going to a place like that. _____ do I.

It is increasing _____ 90 million every year.

... the population in developing countries is _____ that in developed countries.

China _____ the largest population in the world, and about one _____ of the people in the world live in China.

_____ to the policy, China is developing quickly and ...

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1 **Read the two short passages and take notes based on the table on Page 16.**

Hello, everyone! My name is Sue. I live in Canada. Canada is a large country with a population of about 36 million. I live in a small mountain town called Fairmont. I have lived here since I was three. Fewer than 600 people live here. The small town is surrounded by trees. The air is clean and fresh. People live close to nature and try to protect it. They are careful with garbage and discourage cutting trees. The town is really like one big family. The local people often help each other and have fun together. But sometimes it is hard to see friends because they live so far away.

Hi, I'm Li Ming. I live in Beijing, the capital of China. My city has a long history and many places of interest. We have big shopping centers and huge markets. Our public transportation is excellent, too. Buses, taxis, and subways can take my friends and me to any part of the city. We can play sports, see Beijing operas, go to movie theaters, and eat delicious food. There are many fine places such as Beihai Park and Tian'anmen Square where we can meet with friends to dance or listen to music. I love my city of Beijing because I have so many friends here and we have so many interesting places to visit together. But now the large population in Beijing has caused some problems.

Name	Sue	Li Ming
Place	in Fairmont, a small town	in Beijing, a large city
Advantage		
Disadvantage		

2 **Write a short passage about the place you would like to live based on 1.**

You may begin like this:

I'm … I would like to live in … First of all, …

Project

Making a Report on Different Types of Families

1. Look at the different types of families below and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each type of family.

2. Which kind of family do you belong to and which one do you like better? Why?

extended family

nuclear family

3. Report the result to the class.

TOPIC 3 The world has changed for the better.

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

(*Helen and Bob are talking on the phone.*)

Helen: You have been in New York for a long time. How do you like living there?

Bob: It's great. I really love it.

Helen: But I heard that the local traffic was terrible and almost everyone drove too fast.

Bob: Oh, you will get used to it very soon if you come.

Helen: I also heard the streets were dirty.

Bob: They used to be, but the city has improved a lot since I came here a few years ago.

Helen: Isn't it dangerous to live there?

Bob: Well, it was in the past, but it's quite safe now. As a matter of fact, it's a wonderful place to live. Near our block, there are beautiful parks, good schools, famous museums and excellent restaurants. And you can go to plays, concerts and operas every day if you like. You must come for a visit. Then you can see New York yourself.

1b Listen to 1a and tick what was mentioned about New York.

In the past	☐ terrible traffic ☐ dirty streets ☐ unfriendly people ☐ dangerous to live ☐ fewer shopping centers
Nowadays	☐ beautiful parks ☐ clean and fresh air ☐ huge markets ☐ famous museums ☐ good schools ☐ excellent restaurants

1c Work in pairs and describe New York to your partner based on 1b. You may start like this:

A: How much do you know about the traffic in New York?

B: I heard that the traffic there was terrible. Do you have any ideas about the streets there?

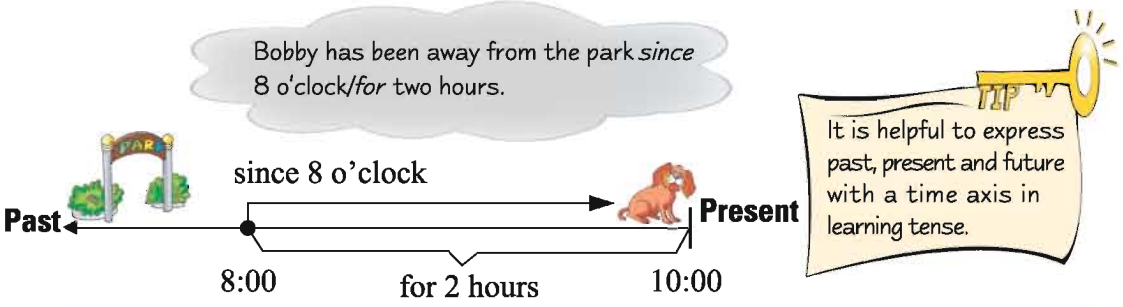
A: ...

2 **Listen to the passage and fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words or phrases.**

theater used to improve wonderful as a matter of fact since

Broadway is a street in New York. It has been there _____ 1811. It _____be dirty. But it _____ since the 1920s. The area near Times Square is the home of Broadway theaters. There have been many famous _____ along the street for many years. A lot of artists perform plays, concerts and operas there. Every year millions of visitors come to enjoy the _____ music and dance on Broadway. _____ , Broadway stands for the American theater industry.

3 **Look carefully and think about the differences between *since* and *for* in 1a. Then complete the sentences with *since* or *for* and listen and check.**



1. I have lived in Beijing _____ three years. / _____ 2011.
2. He has waited for Tom _____ two hours ago. / _____ two hours.
3. We have learned chemistry _____ one month. / _____ the new term began.

4 **Work in groups and talk about the place you live. Compare today's situation with that of the past. The following dialogs may help you.**

A: I have been in … for/since …

B: How do you like living there?

A: It is …/Very good./I really …

B: Was the local traffic terrible/good/…?

A: Yes./No, it was … /used to be … in the past, and now it is …

B: …

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

Maria: What are you reading, Jane?

Jane: I'm reading a newspaper from Canada. Martin showed me an interesting article. It is about a program that helps homeless people.

Maria: Are there homeless people in Canada?

Jane: Oh, yes. Many countries have homeless people. The article says one city has a wonderful program. Since it started, it has helped hundreds of people return to work and live a normal life.

Maria: That sounds great! How do they manage it?

Jane: Well, once they find people in need, they decide on suitable ways to offer them help.

Maria: Can the homeless people get enough food, homes and medical treatment?

Jane: Yes. And it's not only that. The program also provides them with job training so that they can find jobs again.

Maria: I think it is important for these people to feel good about themselves.

Jane: You are right. The world has changed for the better.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. Maria and Jane are talking about a program in China. ( )
2. The program helps the homeless people in many ways. ( )
3. The program also trains those people in need to help them find jobs again. ( )
4. It is important to let homeless people feel good about themselves. ( )
5. The world has not changed people's lives. ( )

1c Read 1a and fill in the blanks.

There is a wonderful program that helps _____ people in Canada. The program not only _____ enough food, _____ and homes for the homeless people, but also _____ them in order to help them _____ again. Thanks to the program, the homeless people feel _____ about themselves.

2 **Complete the passage with the correct forms of the given phrases in the box.**

get used to feel good provide...with in need decide on medical treatment

The heaviest rainstorm since 1951 hit Beijing and caused floods in some areas on July 21, 2012. Many people got in trouble and some even lost their homes. Our government _____ them _____ tents and _____immediately. Some volunteers drove to pick up the people _____. They _____ many different ways to help the homeless. The whole city was in a helpful mood. "I _____ because I could help so many people out and I hope they will _____ the new life," said the farm worker, Li Chuannan.

3a **Review the differences between *since* and *for*. Read Xiao Lin's experiences and fill in the blanks with *since* or *for*.**

Xiao Lin is not only the secretary of the Helpers' Club but also an excellent computer engineer. He's the son of a fisherman ...

1992 his father *died*	→	His father *has been dead* ____ many years.
2002 *left* the army because of a leg wound	→	He *has been away from* the army ____ twelve years because of a leg wound.
2003 *came* to Beijing	→	He *has been* in Beijing ____ 2003.
2004 *joined* the Helpers' Club	→	He *has been* a member of Helpers' Club ____ 2004.
2005 *bought* a house	→	He *has had* a house ____ 2005.
2012 *borrowed* a car	→	He *has kept* the car ____ two years.
...	→	...

3b **Retell Xiao Lin's experiences to your partner based on the box in 3a. Work in pairs and make a similar box about your partner.**

4 **Listen and read the following sentences with *since* and *for*, paying attention to the stress, weak form, liaison and pause.**

1. 'I have 'lived in 'New 'York for 'three years.
2. 'He has been 'away from 'home for 'twelve days.
3. Since it 'started,/it has 'helped 'hundreds of 'people 'return to work/and 'live a 'normal life.

Since and *for* are often unstressed in a sentence.

Section C

1a Read and understand.

Are there any homeless people in your hometown? Try to list the reasons you know for the homelessness.

One of the most basic human needs is a home. A home is a safe place. While most people around the world value their homes, there are many people in every country who are homeless.

Some people are homeless for a short period of time because they are moving from one place to another, and other people are not able to find a home. They must live on the streets or in a shelter.

There are many causes of homelessness. Sometimes people can not keep a home because they do not earn enough money, or because they do not have a job. Sometimes people are homeless because they have a problem with drugs or because they have a mental illness. No one is ever homeless **on purpose**.

Whatever the cause of homelessness is, the effects are the same. Homeless people must work very hard to live. They can not raise their children. Sometimes they must steal food just to eat. The government in every country has worked for many years to **support** the homeless but more needs to be done. We must think of the homeless as people, not just as problems.

1b Read 1a and choose the best title.

A. A Serious Problem — Homelessness
B. The Causes and Effects of Homelessness
C. A Home is a Safe Place

1c Read 1a again and complete the table.

Cause of short-time homelessness	Cause of homelessness	Effect of homelessness
1) _____ 2) _____	1) _____ 2) _____ 3) _____ 4) _____	1) _____ 2) _____ 3) _____

1d **Read 1a again and answer the questions.**

1. What does the phrase "on purpose" mean according to the context?
2. What does the word "support" mean according to the context?
3. Have governments done enough to help the homeless people? What else can we do to help them?

2 **Work in groups. Look at the pictures and discuss the causes and effects of homelessness, child labor, or war. The following may help you.**

homeless people

child laborers

cruel wars

A: What are the causes of …?

B: There are many causes of … Some causes are …

A: What are the effects of …?

B: Whatever the cause is, the effects are the same …/The effects are different. Some are …

A: What have governments/people done to help?

B: They have …

A: Have they done enough?

B: ...

A: What can we do now?

B: ...

3 **Write a Cause and Effect passage based on 2. The sentences below may help you.**

- The world has many problems such as _____.
- Some causes of _____ are _____.
- _____ happens because _____.
- Some effects of _____ are _____ and _____.
- The governments have _____.
- People have _____. There is hope that there will be less _____ in the future.

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Present Perfect (III)

You _____ (have gone/have been) in New York for a long time.

The city _____ (has improved/improved) a lot _____ (since/for) I _____ (come/came) here a few years ago.

_____ (Since/For) it _____ (have started/started), it _____ (helped/has helped) hundreds of people return to work and live a normal life.

Functions

Oh, you will get _____ to it very soon if you come.

_____ a matter of fact, it's a wonderful place to live.

You must come for a _____.

Well, once they find people in need, they decide _____ suitable ways to offer them help.

The program also provides them _____ job training so that they can find jobs again.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a **Read the passage and underline the topic sentence for each paragraph.**

Project Hope

Project Hope is an education program to help students. It builds schools in the poorest parts of China and it helps poor families afford an education for their children.

Since Project Hope started in 1989, it has done very well. By 2012, Project Hope had raised 8.73 billion *yuan*. With this money, it has aided 4.5 million children to go to schools and it has built 18 002 Hope Primary Schools.

Project Hope has made important contributions to both the education and the health of children. For more than 20 years, Project Hope has encouraged the moral development and modern thinking of students. As a result, the students in Hope

schools respect their teachers, aid the poor, and help one another. Project Hope is the best-known and most successful education program in China. Without Project Hope, there is a risk that many children would have an unhappy future.

1b **Read 1a again and answer the questions.**

1. What is Project Hope?
2. What has Project Hope done?
3. What's the importance of Project Hope?
4. What can you do for Project Hope?

2 **Complete the passage with the correct forms of the given words.**

be start change work pay leave

Minmin comes from a poor family. She has received help from Project Hope. Without the help of Project Hope, she couldn't continue her studies. Project Hope _____ her life. She _____ a college student for two years. After _____ the college, she will _____ for Project Hope. Project Hope _____ for the education of millions of poor students like Minmin since it _____. Are there any children like her around you? What difficulties do they have? Project Hope can help them.

Project

Making a Speech About an Organization

1. Work in groups and collect information about one of the organizations: *what it is*, *what it has done*, *what the effects of it are* and so on.

World Health Organization

China Children and Teenagers' Fund

International Committee of the Red Cross

Chinese Young Volunteers Association

2. Make a short speech about the organization you have discussed.

Review of Unit 1

1 **Listen and read the sentences, paying special attention to the weak form and intonation.**

1. Every minute, about 261 babies are born in the world.
2. China has developed rapidly since the reform and opening-up.
3. So far, China has carried out many policies to solve the population problem.
4. A: Where have you been?
   B: I have been to an English summer school for a week.
5. A: Isn't it dangerous to live there?
   B: Well, it was in the past, but it's quite safe now.

2 **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given phrases.**

thanks to　be short of　provide … with　in need　on purpose　carry out

1) A friend _____ is a friend indeed.
2) We should do our best to _____ the work.
3) I came up here _____ to tell you what happened to her.
4) I _____ money so I'll pay you back next week.
5) After the earthquake, the government tried to _____ people _____ food and fresh water.
6) _____ this method, his English has improved a lot.

3 **Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.**

1) have been　have gone
   A. I _____ to Italy three times.
   B. Lily is not here now. She _____ to the railway station to meet her mother.
2) ever　never　already　yet
   A. I have _____ been to the new museum in my city, so I know nothing about it at all.
   B. — Have you _____ watched the film, *Avatar*?
   — Not _____. I'll watch it this weekend.
   C. The government has _____ made some plans to control the population.
3) since　for
   A. Our country has developed rapidly _____ the reform and opening-up.
   B. John's father has been in the small town _____ quite a long time.

4 Read the passage and complete the table.

Chinese Teenagers' Leisure Life

In the past, teenagers hardly had any chance to go out and have fun. They had no computers, even without TV at home. Nowadays, Chinese teenagers have more fun than those in the past.

First, they have plenty of chances to go outside and join in all kinds of outdoor activities. They can enjoy the fun of teenager life as well as the sunshine. During their holidays, they may get close to nature to enjoy its beauty. They can go to the seaside to swim in the sea, sunbathe and play beach volleyball. They can go climbing to share fresh air with the singing birds. Sometimes, they might go out for a picnic to have fun together. They can also get close to culture by going to cultural parks and visiting museums. In their spare time, teenagers often play team sports together, like football and basketball.

Teenagers nowadays also enjoy more indoor activities. They can have a party with their friends at weekends. If they don't want to go out, they may surf the Internet to play games or chat with others. They may watch their favorite TV programs or movies without leaving their homes.

How happy the Chinese teenagers are!

Chinese teenagers' leisure life	
outdoor activity	get close to nature: 1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ get close to culture:_____ play team sports:_____
indoor activity	have a _____ surf the _____ to _____ or _____ watch _____ or _____

5 Write a short passage for your school newspaper. Tell everybody about the changes in Chinese teenagers' leisure life.

UNIT 2 Saving the Earth

TOPIC 1 Pollution has caused too many problems.

Section A

1a **Listen, look and say.**

(*Kangkang, Jane, Maria and Michael are planning a picnic for Sunday.*)

Jane and Maria: Kangkang, where shall we go?

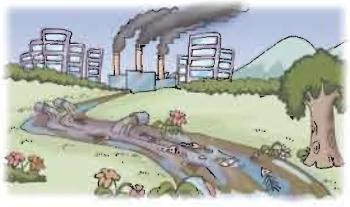
Kangkang: What about the West Hill? I went there two years ago. It was a beautiful place. There were lots of flowers and grass. The air was fresh and the water was clean, and you could see bees and butterflies dancing.

Michael: Sounds great! Let's go there.

(*On Sunday, they come to the West Hill.*)

Kangkang: Oh, what a mess! The flowers and grass have gone! The water is so dirty. It smells terrible. What has happened here?

Maria: What a shame! Look, there are several chemical factories pouring waste water into the stream.



Kangkang: Everything has changed.

Michael: Do you still want to have a picnic here?

Jane: Of course not.

1b **Listen to 1a and mark the words with P (Past) or N (Now).**

____ beautiful ____ butterflies ____ dirty ____ grass ____ terrible

____ factory ____ bees ____ fresh ____ clean ____ waste water

1c **Read 1a and complete the sentences in the table. Then retell 1a to your partner.**

Two years ago	Now
1. It was a _____.	1. _____ have gone.
2. There were_____.	2. The water is _____ and smells _____.
3. The air was _____ and you could see _____ _____.	3. There are several _____ pouring _____into the stream.
	4. _____ has changed.

2 **Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and make up conversations similar to the example with your partner.**

village/flowers and grass
villagers/destroy

Example:

A: There were lots of *flowers and grass* when I visited the *village* last year.

B: But now the *flowers and grass* have gone.

A: What has happened here?

B: The *villagers* have *destroyed* them.

hill/trees
farmers/cut down

lake/fish
factory/pollute

3 **A. Listen to the sentences and number the pictures.**

B. Listen again and complete the sentences.

1. People _____ _____ _____ too many trees, so I don't have enough leaves to eat.
2. I live in trees but now many trees _____ _____.
3. I like leaves and grass, but now they _____ _____.
4. I _____ _____ hungry for months because of less bamboo.
5. Human polluted the sea, so I _____ _____ _____.
6. The water _____ _____ many years ago. But it _____ _____ _____ for me to live in now.

4 **Work in groups and talk about pollution in a place you are familiar with. The following sentences may help you.**

... ago, it was … Now, … have/has gone. What has happened? Everything has changed. Oh, my goodness!

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

(*Mrs. Zhou is coughing. She looks weak.*)

Kangkang: Good morning, Mrs. Zhou. What's wrong with you?

Mrs. Zhou: Oh, Kangkang. It's difficult for me to breathe. I've got a pain in my throat.

Kangkang: How long have you been like this?

Mrs. Zhou: I've been like this since last week.

Kangkang: Have you seen a doctor?

Mrs. Zhou: Not yet. The chemical factory produces terrible gas. The bad air makes my chest hurt. What's worse, the factory makes too much noise and I can't sleep well at night.

Kangkang: That's too bad.

Mrs. Zhou: Yes, it is really awful. I'm always in a bad mood because I can't bear the environment here. Anyway, I hope the government will solve this problem soon. By the way, have you noticed the dead fish in the river?

Kangkang: Oh, yes. Pollution has caused too many problems. I think I should write to the newspaper about these problems. But now you'd better go to see a doctor.

1b A. Listen to 1a and check the questions you hear.

Question	Answer
1. ____ What's wrong with you?	_____
2. ____ How long have you been like this?	_____
3. ____ Where have you been?	_____
4. ____ Have you seen a doctor?	_____
5. ____ Have you noticed the dead fish in the river?	_____

B. Listen again and match each question above with an answer below.

a. Not yet.
b. I've been like this since last week.
c. It's difficult for me to breathe.
d. Oh, yes.

1c Read 1a and answer the questions.

1. What caused Mrs. Zhou's problems?
2. What will Kangkang do?
3. Do you have any other ways to solve Mrs. Zhou's problems?

2 Choose the correct words to complete the passage.

Dear editor,

I'm writing to say something about the chemical factory near my house. The factory causes _____ (too many / too much) problems. First, it produces terrible gas, and it is hard for us to _____ (breathe / breath). What's worse, the factory makes a lot of noise. We can't sleep well at night. It also pollutes the river nearby. Now there are many _____ (die / dead) fish in the river. I think people should care for these problems and I hope the government will solve them soon.

Yours,
Kangkang

3a Look at the pictures and read the words and phrases, paying attention to the sounds and stress.

'soil po'llution

'water po'llution

'noise po'llution

'air po'llution

'litter

'light po'llution

3b Complete the sentences with the words and phrases in 3a. Then read them aloud, paying special attention to the pronunciation, liaison and pause.

Example:

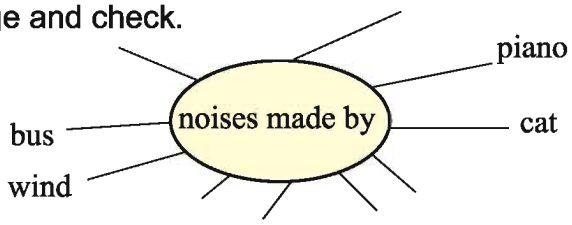
People use chemicals too much in their fields,/and soil pollution causes unhealthy food.

1. People pour waste water into rivers and lakes,/so _____ is almost everywhere in China.
2. _____ makes people sick./It causes breathing problems and even cancer.
3. In some cities,/there's too much _____ caused by many cars.
4. _____ is harmful to birds./Also,/when we use too many lights at night, we waste energy.
5. _____makes a mess of our environment,/so people shouldn't throw it around.

Section C

1a Read and understand.

Before you read, write down the things that can make noises. Then read the passage and check.



In today's world, almost everyone knows air pollution is harmful to people's health. However, not all people know noise is also a kind of pollution and is harmful to humans' health.

People who work and live in noisy conditions often go deaf. For example, many of the workers who print newspapers and books lose their hearing. Quite a few people living near airports also have hearing loss. Recently, it was reported that many teenagers in America can hear no better than 65-year-old people do, because these young people always listen to loud pop music.

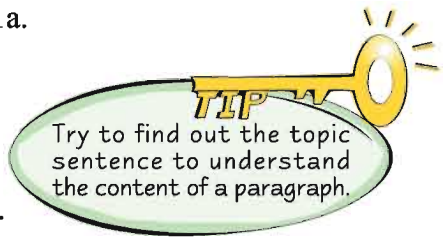
Making a loud noise in public is also a kind of pollution. It not only disturbs others but also does great harm to people's hearing. Cars and machines also produce too much noise. Such pollution makes people feel uncomfortable and unpleasant, and it can even cause them to become sick or deaf. Nowadays, many countries are trying to solve all sorts of environmental problems, including noise pollution.

1b Read 1a and match the words with their meanings.

1. produce	A. to hurt someone
2. deaf	B. a type or a kind
3. print	C. not be able to hear
4. harm	D. to grow or make something
5. sort	E. to put words or pictures onto paper using a machine

1c Read 1a again and complete the following tasks.

1. Underline the topic sentence of the passage in 1a.
2. How does noise harm people's health?
   a. People often _____.
   b. People often feel _____ and _____.
   c. People may become _____ or _____.
   d. Your point: _____.
3. Which phrase has the same meaning as "is harmful to"?
4. Which sentence shows that many teenagers' hearing in America is not good?
5. Why is the hearing of many young Americans not good?
6. Has noise pollution caused you any problems? If yes, share your feelings with your classmates.



2 Complete the following passage with the correct form of each word.

Noise is a kind of _____ (pollute). Cars and machines produce too much noise. It makes people feel _____ (comfortable) and _____ (pleasant). It also does great _____ (harm) to people's _____ (hear). Noise is very _____ (harm) to humans' _____ (healthy).

3 Choose one kind of pollution and discuss it in groups. The following questions may help you.

1. What is … pollution?
2. What makes the … pollution?
3. What problems does it cause?
4. In what way is it harmful to people's life?
5. What has been done to solve these problems?

…

4 Write a short report about a kind of pollution based on 2 and 3. The topic sentence of each paragraph is given below.

... pollution is …

... pollution is harmful to people's health ...

The government has tried many ways to solve the problem ...

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Simple Past & Present Perfect

I _____ (go) there two years ago.	I have _____ (be) like this since last week.
There _____ (be) lots of flowers and grass.	The flowers and grass _____ (go)!
What _____ (happen) here?	

Functions

Oh, what a _____ !
There are several chemical factories _____ waste water into the stream.
What's _____ , the factory makes too much noise ...
Noise is _____ to humans' health.
People who work and live in noisy conditions often _____ deaf.
… many teenagers in America can hear no _____ than 65-year-old people do, …
… does great _____ to people's hearing.

How well do you know Sections A-C ? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Read the passage and complete the table on Page 34.

There are many kinds of pollution around us, including air pollution, soil pollution, noise pollution and light pollution. They are bad for our health in many ways.

Burning gas, oil and coal creates air pollution. It can cause sore eyes and breathing problems.

With the increase in population and the development of industry, litter is everywhere. It makes our environment dirty. People put lots of litter into the land. In the fields, farmers use too many chemicals which destroy the soil. Soil pollution causes unhealthy food.

Noise pollution can make people deaf. For example, people may lose their hearing if they work in a noisy place for a long time. Too much noise can cause high blood pressure as well.

Working in strong light for a long time may cause some kinds of illnesses. It makes people feel terrible and is especially bad for eyes.

With less pollution, our planet will become greener and our health will be better. Let's be greener people.

Pollution	Cause	Effect
air pollution	burning _____, _____ and _____	_____ eyes and _____ problems
soil pollution	_____ everywhere, use too many _____	_____ environment and _____food
noise pollution	_____ place for a long time	make people _____ and cause _____ pressure
light pollution	_____ light	kinds of_____, bad for _____

1b **Read and understand the first sentence. Then complete the second one.**

1. They are bad for our health in many ways.
   They _____ to our health in different ways.
2. People may lose their hearing if they work in a noisy place for a long time.
   If people work in noisy conditions for a long time they may have _____.
3. Noise pollution can make people deaf.
   People may _____ deaf _____ noise pollution.

Project

Making a Wall Newspaper About Pollution

1. **Collect some pictures about pollution.**
2. **What kind of pollution does each picture show? Work in groups and discuss its bad effects.**
3. **Make a wall newspaper about different kinds of pollution and the harm caused by them.**

TOPIC 2 All these problems are very serious.

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

(*Kangkang, Maria and Jane are talking in a room. The wind outside is blowing strongly.*)

Kangkang: What bad weather! The wind is so strong! And the sand really hurt my face. While I was walking down the street just now, I couldn't see anything.

Maria: I'm sorry to hear that. What causes these sandstorms?

Jane: People have cut down too many trees. As a result, a lot of rich land has changed into desert.

Maria: That's bad. How can that affect the weather?

Jane: Trees can stop the wind from blowing the earth away.

Kangkang: And a lot of water can be saved by forests.

Jane: They can also stop the water from washing the earth away.

Kangkang: Cutting down trees is harmful to human beings, animals and plants. Although we have built "The Green Great Wall", we still need to do something to protect the environment.

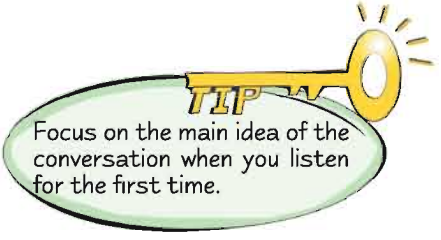
1b Listen to 1a and choose the best answer.

The boy and girls are talking about _____.

A. different types of sandstorms

B. the reasons for sandstorms

C. sandstorms in different cities



1c Read 1a and complete trees' functions.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the given phrases in the box.

as a result	change into	do something	stop… from	blow... away

1. People have cut down such a large number of trees that the land _____ desert.
2. There are fewer trees left, so the wind always _____ the earth _____.
3. Air pollution has become a serious problem, so we must _____ to reduce it.
4. We should try our best to _____ people _____ cutting down the trees.
5. In the future, human beings can protect the trees well. _____, animals will live a happy life in the forest.

3 Do you know how sandstorms come into being? Number the pictures and talk about the sandstorm in groups.

wash the earth away

many trees

change into desert

forests gone

sandstorms come into being

cut down trees

4 A. Listen to the passage and circle the phrases you hear.

become weaker on the earth	destroy the environment	disappear rapidly
	enough bamboo to eat	

B. Listen again and fill in the blanks.

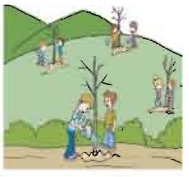
1. Now some kinds of animals are becoming _____ _____ _____.
2. Some animals are _____ _____ _____ dying out completely.
3. In the past, pandas lived a quiet life and had _____ _____ food.
4. Humans have _____ _____ _____ the importance of protecting animals.
5. We should _____ _____ _____ to protect them.

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

Michael: Kangkang, read this article.
Kangkang: What's it about?
Michael: It's about air pollution in China. It says that China has become the world's largest producer and user of coal. As a result, air pollution has become a serious problem.
Kangkang: Yeah. But the government is doing something useful to protect the environment.
Michael: That's great. None of us likes pollution.
Kangkang: Yes. We shouldn't leave rubbish here and there. Don't spit anywhere in public. Don't walk on grass or pick flowers. Everyone should care for wild animals and plant more trees.
Michael: That's right. We should do everything we can to protect the environment.

1b Listen to 1a and number the following pictures.



( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( )

1c Read 1a and complete the table.

Should do	Shouldn't do
1. _____ wild animals	1. _____ rubbish here and there
2. plant _____	2. _____ anywhere in public
3. do _____ we can	3. _____ on grass
	4. pick _____

2 **Listen to the letter and help Kangkang to complete it. Then read it aloud as accurately as possible.**

Dear Headmaster,

I'm writing to tell you _____ important. Nobody likes to be untidy. However, some students throw waste paper and bottles _____. We all need a quiet place to study, but some students often make too much noise at school. Worst of all, some of them are quite rude when talking to _____. _____ knows their behavior is bad, but _____ of us knows how to stop them.

I think we should make rules to change the situation. _____ who breaks the rules will be punished. Perhaps it will be hard for us to obey the rules in the beginning, but if _____ does his or her best to follow the rules, our school environment will improve.

Sincerely,

Kangkang

3 **Read and understand the first sentence. Then complete the second one and read them aloud, paying attention to the weak form, liaison and intonation.**

Example:

As we all know, air pollution has become a serious problem.

Everybody knows air pollution has become a serious problem.

1. None of us would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around.
   _____ would like to see dirty water and rubbish lying around.
2. We should follow social rules and spit nowhere in public.
   We should follow social rules and not spit _____ in public.
3. We should do everything to protect the environment in our daily lives.
   We shouldn't do _____ to destroy the environment in our daily lives.

4 **Discuss the following questions in groups and try to find the solutions.**

1. Do you have any bad habits when you are at school? What are they?

   _____

2. How can you make your school look better?

   _____

Section C

1a Read and understand.

Look at the following pictures and predict the main idea of the passage.

The earth is 4.6 billion years old. We humans have lived on the earth for only 35 000 years, but during this period, we have changed **our planet** a lot in many ways. Some things we have done are very good for the earth while others are bad.

_____ All over the world, people have cut down millions of trees. When it rains or when the wind blows, the earth is taken away. Forests have become deserts, so many kinds of animals and plants are disappearing.

_____ In big cities, cars and buses have polluted the air. Now many people in cities have health problems.

_____ Factories have also polluted the land and the water. As a result, many rivers and lakes are now dead.

_____ Around the earth, there's a special kind of oxygen called "ozone"(O_3). It is important to the earth. But now air pollution is destroying **it** and making a very big hole in the ozone layer. Too much harmful radiation from the sun passes through the hole and reaches the earth directly. This is very dangerous because this kind of radiation can cause cancer.

_____ Carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the air has increased a lot. It mainly comes from burning oil, coal and wood. This has formed a **blanket** around the earth. The heat from the sun can't escape so the temperature is rising. This is called "the greenhouse effect". It causes the level of the oceans to rise and the climate of the earth to change.

All these problems are very serious, so we must do something now.

1b **Read 1a and complete the following tasks.**

1. Choose suitable titles for Paragraphs 2-6. Then write it down in front of each paragraph.

   A. Traffic pollution B. Factory pollution C. Fewer trees

   D. The ozone hole E. More carbon dioxide

2. What does **our planet** mean here?

   A. The sun. B. Mars. C. The moon. D. The earth.

3. In the passage, **blanket** refers to _____.

   A. carbon dioxide around the earth

   B. the ozone layer in the sky

   C. the forests around the world

   D. pollution all over the world

4. The word **it** in Paragraph 5 refers to _____.

   A. CO_2 B. O_3 C. O_2 D. H_2O

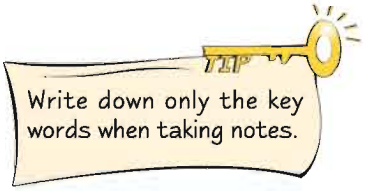
5. What is the best title for this passage?

   A. Environmental Problems

   B. Pollution on the Earth

   C. Hope for the Future

   D. The Greenhouse Effect



1c **Complete the notes according to 1a.**

Problem	Effect on the environment
fewer trees	forests become deserts, animals and plants disappear
traffic pollution	
	greenhouse effect, level of oceans rising, climate change
...	...

2 **Surf the Internet to collect more information about environmental problems and effects. Then discuss the information in groups and take notes.**

3 **Combine the key points in 1c and 2 to form a short passage and pay attention to the proper linking words.**

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Indefinite Pronoun and Adverb

_____ of us likes pollution.

Don't spit _____ in public.

_____ should care for wild animals and plant more trees.

We should do _____ we can to protect the environment.

Functions

_____ a result, a lot of rich land has changed _____ desert.

Trees can stop the wind from blowing the earth _____.

We shouldn't leave rubbish _____.

All these problems are very serious, _____ we must do something now.

How well do you know Sections A-C ? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Read the passage and put the following paragraphs in the correct order.

( ) The sea seems to have the best answer. There is plenty of water in the sea. But we need to take the salt away from the sea water. This is very expensive. If scientists can find cheaper ways to do it, we can solve the problem of the shortage of water.

( ) How can we avoid a serious water shortage? First, we should save water and not waste it. Second, we should protect our water resources and not pollute them. Third, we should discover ways to reuse water. Scientists have made some progress in this field. Today, some large cities are reusing their water. But people's need for water is increasing day by day. We still don't have enough water. What else can we do?

( ) Although the world is hungry, it is even thirstier. While nearly 3/4 of the earth is covered with water, we are still short of drinking water. This is because about 97% of the water on the earth is sea water. So we can't use it for watering plants or drinking directly. Humans can only drink and use fresh water from places including rivers, lakes and underground.

1b **Read 1a again and answer the questions.**

1. Why is our world thirsty when 3/4 of the earth is covered with water?
2. What can we do now to avoid the water shortage?
3. What will be the best way to solve the problem in the future in the passage?
4. Do you know any other ways to solve the problem? What are they?

2 **Discuss in groups different ways of protecting and saving water. Write down the key information.**

Example:

1. Pass laws against water pollution.
2. Collect and reuse waste water.

...

3 **Write a proposal about saving water to all the students in your school.**

My dear friends,

Water is very important to human beings. Let's do something to protect and save it.

First, _____. Second, _____. Third, _____.

Let's try our best to save water and our planet.

_____

Project

Making Posters About Natural Resources

1. Divide the class into several groups: Water Group, Tree Group, Soil Group ...

2. Each group should discuss their own uses, the problems that they face and their wishes. Then give a report in class.

Example:

Uses: I am soil. Plants can't grow without me. People use me to make many things ...

Problems: Sometimes people use too many chemicals in the fields. What's worse, they put waste into the land ... So I'm hurt. Please help me.

Wishes: I hope human beings can protect and take care of me. And then I could do more useful things for them ...

3. Make some posters with the results.

TOPIC 3 What can we do at home to protect the environment?

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

(*A journalist is interviewing Jane about environmental protection.*)

Journalist: Hi, Jane. Could I ask you a few questions?

Jane: Certainly.

Journalist: We all know that you're working for an organization that protects the environment. Can you tell us what you are doing there?

Jane: Well, my main job is to help spread the message about protecting the environment. For example, the three R's — reduce, reuse and recycle — are important.

Journalist: So what can we do at home to protect the environment?

Jane: We should reduce the waste we produce. For example, we should use both sides of paper and reuse plastic bags.

Journalist: What can students do at school?

Jane: Recycling can protect the environment, and it can save money, too. So we encourage students to collect waste paper and soft drink cans. Then we sort them so that they can be recycled.

Journalist: Wonderful ideas! Thank you!

Jane: It's a pleasure.

1b Listen to 1a and complete the table.

An interview with Jane	
where Jane works	in an _____ to _____
what Jane is doing	helping _____ about protecting the environment
what we can do at home	_____ we produce
what students can do at school	collect _____ and soft drink cans

1c Read 1a and complete the sentences.

1. The three R's — _____, _____ and _____ — are important.
2. At home, we can, for example, use both _____ of paper and reuse _____ bags.
3. At school, students are encouraged to _____ waste paper and _____ because recycling can protect the _____ and _____ money.
4. Then we _____ them _____ they can be recycled.

2 **Combine the sentences with *or*, *and*, *but* or *while*, making some changes if necessary.**

1. Noise is a kind of pollution. It's harmful to our hearing.
2. Work hard. You will fail the exam.
3. Nodding the head means agreement. Shaking the head means disagreement.
4. Hurry up. You will miss the bus.
5. He has failed several times. He never gives up.

3a **Read the table and write the correct letter under each picture. Then sort the garbage based on your own knowledge.**

_____ _____ _____ _____ _____

Type of garbage	Recycled	Reused	Reduced
a. plastic bags		√	
b. paper cups			
c. cans			
d. newspapers			
e. glass bottles			

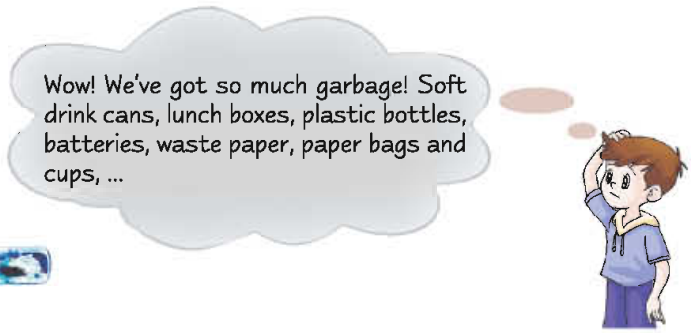
3b **Listen to the conversation and check your answers in 3a.**

4 **Suppose you will have a Clean-up Day. Work in groups and find out the garbage. Then sort them based on 3a and talk about them.**

A: I think lunch boxes should be reused.

B: What about waste paper?

A: I think…



Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

TIP
Remember some English idioms and try to use them often.

Jane: Hi, Michael. Would you like to be a greener person?

Michael: Of course, I'd love to. But what should I do?

Jane: First, you ought to shut off the electricity when you leave a room.

Michael: Oh, that's easy. What's next?

Jane: Second, you'd better walk or ride a bike instead of taking a bus or a taxi if you travel a short distance.

Michael: That's right. It will save energy and reduce air pollution.

Jane: Third, take a cloth bag when you go shopping. Don't use plastic bags.

Michael: It's so easy to be a greener person.

Jane: Easier said than done.

Michael: Well, actions speak louder than words.

1b Listen to 1a and choose the correct answers.

1. Jane and Michael are mainly talking about _____.

   A. why we should shut off the electricity when we leave

   B. what we should use when we go shopping

   C. how to be a greener person

2. "Actions speak louder than words" means_____.

   A. words are not as loud as actions

   B. to do well is better than to say well

   C. actions can speak, but words can't do it

1c Read 1a and complete the table.

To be a greener person
1. _____when you leave the room.
2. If you travel a short _____, you shouldn't _____, but _____. So this helps to _____ and _____.
3. When you go shopping, you'd better _____ instead of using _____.

2 **Choose the correct verbs or phrases to complete the statements. Then match them with the right pictures.**

shut off	reduce	grow	recycle
ride	cover	use	

1. _____ waste. Don't buy cups or boxes which can be used only once.
2. Save electricity. _____ the electricity when you are not using it.
3. _____ boxes and plastic bottles.
4. _____ fruit and vegetables yourself.
5. Try to _____ a bike when you travel.
6. _____ both sides of the paper.
7. _____ pans when you are cooking.

3 **Read the passage and fill in the blanks with the correct words. Then listen and check. The first letter of each word is given.**

The earth is our home. Some things we have done are good for the earth w_____ some are bad. We have polluted the earth, a_____ it is sick now. We c_____ down too many trees, so lots of rich land has c_____ into desert. Factories p_____ waste water into rivers. Pollution has caused many s_____ problems. The earth is crying for help.

What shall we do to save it? We should plant more trees, r_____ the waste we produce, r_____ the waste paper and soft drink cans, and ride bikes to reduce air pollution. I think we should try to be g_____ people to protect our earth. After all, we have only one earth. We should do e_____ to protect it, or we' ll be punished and lose our home.

4 **Work in groups and survey your group members about what they do to be greener people. Then report it to your class. Pay attention to the stress, liaison, incomplete plosion and intonation.**

Example:

A: 'Wha(t) do you 'often 'do to be a 'greener person?

B: Well, 'I 'always 'shut off the electricity when I 'am not 'using it.

A: 'Good. 'What about you, 'John?

C: …

Section C

1a Read and understand.

Look at the pictures. Do you know what they are? Choose the right picture for each paragraph.

A

B

C

In many countries, people produce power from coal, but it is very dirty and causes acid rain. Some countries use nuclear energy to produce power. However, nuclear power can be very dangerous. To solve the energy problem, people all over the world are looking for new ways to produce power.

_____ China is one of the first countries in the world to use biogas technology. Farmers recycle straw, grass and animal waste to make biogas. This renewable energy is used in people's everyday lives. Its key disadvantage is that the process requires a long time (up to 30 days) and the cost is high.

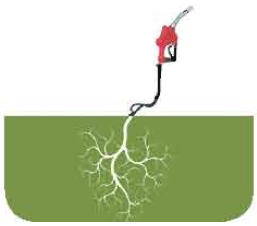
_____ Electric vehicles were developed in the 1990s. On April 11, 2010, a new kind of electric vehicle named "Yezi" was shown in the 2010 Shanghai World Expo. It produces electricity from the sun, the wind and CO_2. It can not only protect the environment but also save energy. It's too small to hold many people, but larger models will be developed in the near future.

_____ In China, the best-known maglev train is the German-built one in Shanghai. It takes people just 7 minutes to go to the airport 30 km away. The train can reach a top speed of 431 km per hour. It is quiet and quick. There is no wheel noise, because there are no wheels. Maglev trains are very energy-efficient and do not pollute the air. However, maglev guide paths are much more expensive than traditional steel railways.

1b Read 1a and match the words with the pictures on Page 48.

A. acid rain	B. nuclear energy	C. biogas

( )



( )

( )

1c **Read 1a again and complete the table.**

Item	Advantage	Disadvantage
biogas		
electric vehicle		
maglev train		

2a **Read the passage below and match the pictures with the sentences. Then discuss in detail the use of one energy source.**

The sun, wind, waves and heat from deep in the earth are energy sources. They will never run out so they are called renewable sources. In 2011, about 16% of energy used worldwide came from renewable sources. The use of it is increasing rapidly each year.

( )

( )

( )

( )

1. Wind can produce electricity in many places.
2. People use sunlight to produce electricity.
3. Sea waves are used for producing electricity.
4. People use hot water or steam from deep in the earth to produce electricity and heat for factories, schools and homes.

2b **Take notes on your discussion and write a passage with them.**

You may begin like this:

Sunlight can produce a lot of energy. People began to use the energy from the sunlight in different ways many years ago…

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Compound Sentence

Recycling can protect the environment, _____ it can save money, too.
Some things we have done are good for the earth _____ some are bad.
We should do everything to protect it, _____ we'll be punished and lose our home.
People produce power from coal, _____ it is very dirty and causes acid rain.

Functions

Would you like to be a _____ person?
First, you ought to _____ the electricity when you leave a room.
_____ said than done.
Actions speak _____ than words.
The train can _____ a top speed of 431 km per hour.

How well do you know Sections A-C ? Now do the following tasks and check.

Read the passage and answer the questions on Page 50.

Forests are the lungs of the earth. Without them, it cannot breathe. It needs its forests to remove carbon dioxide from the air and to make oxygen. In many countries, such as New Zealand, Canada, and Brazil, forests were cut down to provide wood to build houses. Many young volunteers around the world are working in their holidays to plant new trees to replace them.

These young men and women face many difficulties when they plant new trees. The weather may be very hot and dry or it may be very cold and wet. There are often many insects that bite these planters on their legs, arms, and faces while they work. They carry heavy bags of small trees, and working in the mountains can be dangerous.

Tree planters are changing the world. They plant different types of trees so that birds and animals can live in the forests. Even though tree planting is very difficult, they love their work. They believe that in 50 years their little trees will become beautiful forests.

1. How do you understand "Forests are the lungs of the earth"?
2. What difficulties do tree planters face when they plant trees?
3. Why do they plant different kinds of trees?
4. What will happen if we do not plant new forests?
5. Would you like to be a tree planter when you are older? Why or why not?

Project

Finding the Greenest Person

1. Answer the following questions to see how green you are.

1) Do you recycle newspapers or cans?
A. Often. (2) B. Seldom. (1) C. Never. (0)

2) What do you usually take?
A. A bath. (0) B. A shower. (2)

3) When you have a short journey, how do you usually go there?
A. Walk or ride a bike. (3) B. Go by car. (0) C. Go by bus. (2)

4) What do you usually do when you see others littering?
A. Stop them. (2) B. Pick the litter up. (1) C. Do nothing. (0)

5) How often do you use paper towels?
A. Often. (0) B. Seldom. (1) C. Never. (2)

6) How often do you eat fast food?
A. Often. (0) B. Seldom. (1) C. Never. (2)

7) What type of bags do you use for shopping?
A. Baskets or cloth bags.(3) B. Reused plastic bags. (1) C. New plastic bags.(0)

8) How often do you turn off the lights when you leave a room?
A. Nearly always. (2) B. Seldom. (1) C. Never. (0)

Scores:
0–4 You have not started turning green yet!
5–9 You are pale green.
10–13 You are medium green. Try harder.
14–18 You are bright green, but do not stop trying.

2. Give your points for your answers. What is your total? Compare your result with your group members' and tell the class who is the greenest in your group and give reasons.

Review of Units 1–2

1 **Listen and read the following sentences and pay attention to the pause, weak form, liaison and incomplete plosion. Then read after the tape and imitate.**

1) None of us likes pollution.
2) We shouldn'(t) spit in public.
3) Everyone shoul(d) care for wild animals and plant more trees.
4) People produce power from coal,/but it is very dirty an(d) causes aci(d) rain.
5) I have been to London this summer holiday with my parents.
6) Maria has gone to Paris./She is still there an(d) will be bac(k) nex(t) week.

2 **Read and complete the sentences. The first letters are given. Then listen and check your answers.**

1) The main p_____ of the activity is to raise money for children in poor areas.
2) Our country provides good m_____ treatment for homeless people.
3) I think the government should o_____ us more job opportunities.
4) A_____ the sun was shining, it wasn't very warm.
5) With his help, I've made great p_____ in English learning.
6) With the development of science and t_____, our country is getting stronger and stronger.
7) If you want to go on the trip, you must get your parents' a_____.
8) Someone s_____ my bicycle while I was shopping yesterday.
9) Sweets are h_____ to children's teeth.
10) In Sweden, it is against the l_____ to hit a child.

3 **Complete the conversation with the given words.**

already	yet	just	ever	never	for	since

Bob: Hi, Jim! Have you _____ seen the movie, *The 11th hour*?
Jim: No, I haven't seen it _____. What's it mainly about?
Bob: Environmental problems. I have _____ seen it twice and I think it's wonderful.
Jim: Oh, I haven't seen a movie _____ a long time and I like the movie about environmental problems.

Bob: So you can go to the cinema near my home. The movie will be on there this Sunday.

Jim: But I have _____ been to that cinema. I don't know how to get there.

Bob: Come to see me on Sunday and I will show you the way.

4 Complete the passage with *and*, *but*, *so*, *while* or *although*.

Mary lives about five miles from her work. She used to take a bus there. _____ now there are no buses travelling that way. So she rides to work, _____ her colleagues drive their cars. _____ she could afford a car, she did not want to add to the earth's pollution. _____ she bought an electric motorbike. The bike does not pollute _____ Mary does not need to pay for gasoline. She is happy that her bike is not polluting the environment.

5 Complete the sentences with the given words from the box.

somebody	nobody	none	everybody	anybody
something	anything	anywhere	nothing	somewhere

1) I think _____ should care for animals.
2) _____ of us likes loud noise.
3) My neighbor is sure that _____ has just stolen the new garbage can.
4) I have never heard _____ about light pollution.
5) We plan to go for the picnic. Does _____ else want to come?
6) Don't spit _____ in public or you'll be punished.
7) The government is doing _____ useful to protect the environment.
8) If _____ litters, our world will be more beautiful.
9) Kangkang has gone _____ warm for his holidays.
10) _____ is difficult if you set your mind on it.

6 A. Listen to the conversation and check the problems Li Fei mentioned.

( ) 1) I can't sleep well at night.
( ) 2) I'm always in a bad mood.
( ) 3) The heavy traffic makes too much noise.
( ) 4) The water is very dirty.
( ) 5) There are too many people.

B. Listen again and complete the passage.

Li Fei can't sleep well at night and is always _____. Because the heavy traffic makes _____. It keeps him _____ until midnight. And it's always _____ when he waits for a bus. The sky is _____ all the time. Luckily, the government _____ many measures to solve the problems. Li Fei and Wei Hua decide to _____ a club " Greener China" to protect the environment.

7 Cloze test.

Doctor Smith took over a medical clinic in Toronto. One day, he visited a 74-year-old __(1)__, Mrs. Wilson, in her home in the village nearby. She had stayed in bed __(2)__ 40 years. The doctor examined her but couldn't find __(3)__ wrong. He asked her daughter __(4)__ she was in bed. To his surprise, 40 years __(5)__ a village doctor asked Mrs. Wilson to stay in bed __(6)__ a bad cold. He told her not to __(7)__ until he returned. The village doctor never returned, so she __(8)__ in bed ever since. Her daughter __(9)__ after her up to now. The daughter has never married. She has never had any job except taking care of her mother. Now Mrs. Wilson's muscles are weak. And she has put on __(10)__ weight. She may never walk again.

( ) 1)	A. man	B. doctor	C. girl	D. woman
( ) 2)	A. for	B. in	C. during	D. on
( ) 3)	A. everything	B. nothing	C. anything	D. something
( ) 4)	A. what	B. where	C. why	D. when
( ) 5)	A. before	B. early	C. later	D. ago
( ) 6)	A. because of	B. because	C. as	D. since
( ) 7)	A. get in	B. get on	C. get up	D. get off
( ) 8)	A. was	B. has been	C. have been	D. is
( ) 9)	A. has looked	B. looked	C. was looking	D. will look
( )10)	A. a lot of	B. many	C. a few	D. a number of

8 Read the passage and complete the following tasks.

China's Green Beat is the first green media in China. It provides enjoyable short films to make people care for environmental problems. It has created more than ten short films in order to teach people about environmental problems through these stories.

Shanghai: Over-Packaging

In recent years, the packaging for certain products, for example, mooncakes, has become very beautiful but excessive. The cost of the packaging is often higher than that of the product. The over-packaging of goods creates a lot of waste, seriously wastes our natural resources and pollutes our environment. This new video, produced in Shanghai, visits markets…

Kunming: No Car Day

September 22 is "No Car Day" around the world, but Kunming is the only Chinese city to have "No Car Day" every month. It is on the last Saturday from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. The policy requires that only taxis, buses, bikes and special purpose vehicles are allowed to travel anywhere in the city. On September 22, the air quality in Kunming was reported to be much better because of fewer vehicles.

1) What is *China's Green Beat*?

A. A factory that produces short films.

B. A farm that produces green vegetables.

C. An organization that takes people to protect the environment.

D. A media that produces short films about environmental problems.

2) According to Paragraph 2, over-packaging means_____.

A. large package B. too many packages

C. use too many materials to make the goods look wonderful

D. use too many materials to protect the goods from damage (/ ˈdæmɪdʒ/*n.* harm)

3) What is the traffic policy on "No Car Day" in Kunming?

_____

4) If you want to make some short films for *China's Green Beat*, which of the following can be included?

☐ reusing ☐ recycling ☐ historical events ☐ green lifestyle ☐ cultural differences

9 **Work in groups. Try to search for pictures and information about greener ways of transportation, such as walking on foot and riding a bicycle. Then exchange your information with your partners and have a discussion.**

10 **Write a short passage to a magazine to introduce greener methods of transportation.**

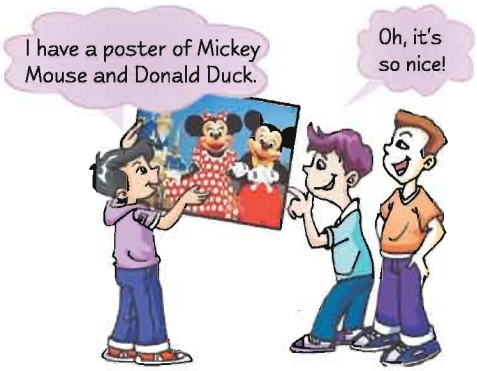
UNIT 3 English Around the World

TOPIC 1 English is widely spoken throughout the world.

Section A

1a **Listen, look and say.**

Kangkang: Hi, boys, come and have a look! I have a poster of Mickey Mouse and Donald Duck.



Li Xiang: Oh, it's so nice! You can stick it on the wall.

Wang Junfeng: That's a good idea. Guess what! My parents and I are going to visit Disneyland, near Los Angeles. I will be able to see more cartoon characters.

Kangkang: Oh, you're so lucky! Disneyland is enjoyed by millions of people from all over the world. I hope I can go there one day.

Li Xiang: Me, too. Are you ready for your trip?

Wang Junfeng: Yes, of course. I can't wait to fly there!

Kangkang: You'll have a good chance to practice English there.

Wang Junfeng: You're right. English is spoken as the main language in America.

Li Xiang: Yeah. It is also widely used throughout the world now.

Wang Junfeng: But I'm not good at English. I'm a little afraid.

Kangkang: Don't worry. Try your best and work much harder from now on.

Wang Junfeng: Thanks. I will.

1b **Listen to 1a and choose the correct answers.**

( ) 1. Who is going to Disneyland?

A.Wang Junfeng. B. Wang Junfeng's parents.

C. Wang Junfeng and his parents.

( ) 2. What language is widely used throughout the world now?

A. Chinese. B. English. C. French.

( ) 3. What are the boys mainly talking about?

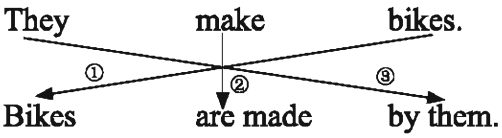
A. English. B. Visiting Disneyland. C. A poster.

1c **Read 1a again and fill in the blanks.**

Wang Junfeng and his parents will go to Disneyland in America next week. Disneyland _____ by millions of people throughout the world. He will have a good chance to _____ because English is important for communication there. English _____ as the main language in America. It _____ also widely _____ around the world.

2a **Study the example and find out how to change the active voice into the passive voice. Then complete the sentences.**

Example:



1. Many people use computers.
   →Computers _____ _____ by _____ _____.
2. The workers plant trees in the garden.
   →Trees _____ _____ in the garden _____ the workers.
3. Lots of foreigners enjoy Beijing Opera.
   →Beijing Opera _____.
4. Many visitors visit the Great Wall every year.
   →The Great Wall _____.

2b **Work in groups of three and play the game by the following example.**

3 **Listen to the passage and mark T (True) or F (False).**

1. Walt Disney was a great film-maker as well as an artist. ( )
2. Walt used to sit in the family garage and draw pictures. ( )
3. One day, a mouse came and played on the floor of the garage. ( )
4. When he first met the mouse, Walt was afraid. ( )
5. At last, he was pleased with one of his pictures of the mouse. He called it Mickey Mouse. ( )

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

(*Jane is talking with her father before he goes to Cuba.*)

Jane: Dad, why are you packing your bags?

Father: I'm going to Cuba on business tonight. Have you seen my passport?

Jane: It's in your night table. Dad, is English spoken as the official language in Cuba?

Father: No, Spanish is spoken as the official language there.

Jane: Is Spanish similar to English?

Father: Not really. Perhaps a few words are the same.

Jane: Oh, I see. Is it possible for you to have trouble communicating?

Father: Yes. I don't think I will have any long conversations in Spanish. If necessary, I'll ask an interpreter for help.

Jane: Will the interpreter explain to you the culture of the country?

Father: Of course. Understanding the language and the culture can help me work well.

Jane: Have a good trip. I wish you success!

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. Jane's father is going to Cuba on business tonight. ( )
2. English is spoken as the official language in Cuba. ( )
3. English is not similar to Spanish. ( )
4. It is impossible for Jane's father to have trouble in Cuba. ( )
5. An interpreter can help Jane's father understand Spanish and the culture. ( )

1c Practice the conversation in 1a. Then complete the table and make up a new conversation based on 1a.

Country	Official language
France	
Japan	
Singapore	
Canada	

2 Complete the sentences with the given phrases.

on business a few the same have trouble ask… for help similar to

1. His new pen looks _____ one of mine.
2. There are only _____ potatoes left.
3. The twin sisters have _____ nose.
4. Bob is coming to Beijing _____ next Sunday.
5. Many kids _____ getting along with their parents nowadays.
6. When you are in trouble, you can _____ your teacher _____.

3 Listen to the passage and answer the questions.

1. What does Mary do?

_____

2. Why does Mary have no trouble understanding people from different countries?

_____

3. Where is English used as a second language?

_____

4. Where did Mary go last month?

_____

5. Can Mary speak Chinese?

_____

4 Make sentences with the passive voice after the example. Then read them aloud, paying attention to the stress and weak form.

Example:

The 'flowers are 'watered by him 'every 'day.

1.

flowers/water/he

cake/divide into pieces/she

2.

carrots/dig/rabbit

3.

baby/lay in the bed/woman

4.

many problems/cause/ large population

5.

Fuwa/love/people

Section C

1a Read and understand.

Discuss the two questions before reading.

1. Is English spoken by the largest number of people in the world?
2. When and where do you use English?

English Around the World (I)

There are more than 3 000 languages spoken in the world. Of all these languages, English is the most widely used. Recent surveys show that more than 500 million people speak English as their mother tongue.

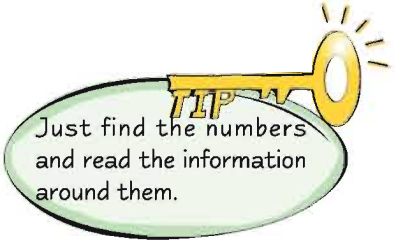
From its roots in England, the language was spread around the world by English traders and English governments in new lands. One of these new lands became the United States of America. The population of the United States is 309 million, making it the country with the largest number of native English speakers.

About 300 million people speak English as their second language. There are even more people, like some in Europe as well as in China and Japan, who study English as a foreign language.

English has become the base language for international business, for the world's airlines and even for the Internet. Whatever language people speak, they need to know some English if they work in these fields. It is clear that the English language is becoming more important.

1b Read 1a and complete the following tasks.

1. Underline the topic sentence of the passage.
2. Find out what the red numbers refer to.



1c **Read 1a again and fill in the blanks.**

English is used as
1. a native language, such as in _____ and _____
2. the _____ language
3. a foreign language, such as in some European countries, _____ and _____
4. the _____ language for international business, the world's airlines and the _____

2 **Complete the passage with the correct forms of the verbs.**

English is the most widely used international language nowadays. It _____ (speak) as the mother tongue in such countries as the United Kingdom, the United States, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. In many other countries, people _____(speak) English as their second language. There are about 750 million English speakers in the world. English _____ (use) in many different fields of life, such as business, tourism and technology. Business people _____(use) English at international conferences, and tourists _____(speak) English when they go abroad. Many English signs _____ (see) in public places. A wide knowledge of English helps us follow English television programs and _____(enjoy) interesting films. The English language _____(play) an important part in our lives.

3a **Work in groups and find the answers to the questions on the Internet. Then share the information with your group members.**

1. Where is Chinese mainly spoken?
2. How many people speak Chinese as their second language? Where are these people from?
3. How many people are learning Chinese as a foreign language? Why are they learning Chinese?

3b **Write a passage based on the study in 3a.**

You may start like this:

Nowadays Chinese is becoming more and more popular all over the world. It's mainly spoken in ...

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

Grammar

Passive Voice (I)

Disneyland _____ by millions of people from all over the world.

_____ English _____ as the official language in Cuba?

Of all these languages, English _____ the most widely _____.

Functions

I can't _____ to fly there!

Try your _____ and work much harder from now on.

_____ a good trip. I _____ you success!

How well do you know Sections A-C ? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a **Read the passage and complete the table on Page 62.**

English Around the World (II)

English has become widely used around the world. Why has this happened? We may find the answer from history.

In the nineteenth century, Great Britain became a powerful country, so English became an international language. Then, since the 1950s, the USA has become more and more powerful. The American computer and Internet industry have taken the leading position in the world. As a result, the Internet has helped English to become much more popular.

China, a country with the largest population in the world, has encouraged more people to learn English since the 1970s. Since the 1990s, English learning has been very popular with Chinese people. Many of them have done well in English and have made great progress in speaking it.

Now, students are required to learn English, and the study of English is regarded as a very important industry in China as well as in the rest of the world.

Why has English become so popular?	
in the 19th century	Great Britain _____. English became _____.
since the 1950s	The USA _____. The Internet _____.
since the 1970s	China _____.
now	The study of English _____.

1b **Retell the passage in pairs based on the table in 1a.**

Project

Debating Which Language Will Be More Widely Used

1. The topic of the debate is "Which language will be more widely used in the world, Chinese or English?"
2. Divide the class into two groups and each group holds different opinions.
3. Discuss in groups and list your opinions. The following information may help you.

Importance	Advantage	Development	Conclusion

4. Debate between two groups.

TOPIC 2 Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures.

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

(*Wang Junfeng and his parents are going to the USA. Michael and Kangkang are going to see them off. Now they are on their way to the airport.*)

Wang Junfeng: I can't believe that I'm flying to Disneyland. I'm so excited.

Kangkang: Of course you are.

(*Michael sees a stranger putting out his hand with his thumb raised.*)

Michael: Stop, please!

Driver: What's up?

Michael: The stranger is asking for a ride. Look at his gesture!

(*The driver stops the minibus.*)

Foreigner: Excuse me, could you please give me a ride to the airport?

Driver: Sure. We're going to the same place. Get on, please.

Foreigner: Thank you very much.

(*They reach the airport twenty minutes later.*)

Kangkang: What time is your flight?

Wang Junfeng: At 5 o'clock. My uncle is meeting us tomorrow. But I'm still worried about my English.

Kangkang: No need to worry. You can buy the guidebook, *A Tour in the USA*.

Wang Junfeng: Good idea. I hope I won't have much difficulty in communication.

Michael: Whenever you need help, send me an e-mail or call me.

Wang Junfeng: Thank you very much. I have to go now. Bye!

1b Listen to 1a and number the following pictures.

( )

(①)

( )

( )

1c Read 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. Michael and Kangkang are going to see Wang Junfeng's family off at a bus station.( )
2. Wang Junfeng's family and the stranger are leaving for Disneyland. ( )

3. The driver stops the minibus and gives the stranger a ride. ( )

4. Michael tells Wang Junfeng to send him an e-mail or call him if he needs any help. ( )

2 Listen to the passage and choose the correct answers.

( ) 1. Where does Bob come from?

A. London. B. America. C. Australia.

( ) 2. When is he going to London?

A. On Sunday. B. Next Saturday. C. Next Sunday.

( ) 3. How many people are going to see him off?

A. Two. B. Three. C. Four.

( ) 4. Who is meeting Bob at the airport?

A. His uncle. B. His aunt. C. His classmate.

3 Study the sentences carefully and pay attention to the verbs and the time. Then choose the correct answers to complete the sentences.

1. When **is** Bob **going** to London? He is going to London **next Sunday**.
2. When **is** Wang Junfeng's uncle **meeting** him? He is meeting him **tomorrow**.
3. When **is** Wang Junfeng **leaving**? He is leaving **in an hour**.

A. I _____ (move/am moving) to Shanghai next month.

B. They _____ (start/are starting) at 8:00 a.m. tomorrow.

C. We are traveling to Beijing _____ (next Sunday/on Sundays).

4 Make up conversations in pairs by following the example.

Example:

A: When are you traveling to Canada?

B: I'm traveling tomorrow.

A: Who are you going with?

B: I'm going with my friends.

travel to Canada/tomorrow/go with

board/ in several minutes/pick... up

go to the central park/ this weekend/give... a ride

arrive at/at 7 o'clock/ give ... a speech

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

TIP
Use your body language to help express yourself.

(*Jane meets Kangkang and Yukio at the school gate.*)

Jane: (*Waving*) Hi, Kangkang and Yukio!

Yukio: (*Bowing*) Hello, Jane!

Kangkang: Yukio, when Jane says "Hi" she waves her hand, but when you say "Hello" you bow.

Yukio: In Japan, we bow when we are saying hello as a sign of respect.

Jane: In Canada, we wave as a sign of peace and friendship.

Kangkang: I think that is known as body language. We use body language to communicate how we feel, even if there is silence.

Yukio: Did you notice that Miss Wang smiles when she is happy, and when she is angry she puts her hands on her hips? Then I know whether she will praise or punish us.

Jane: (*Laughing*) When my little sister is angry, she crosses her arms and stamps her foot!

Kangkang: I wonder if body language means the same thing in all cultures.

Jane: We should do some research. People could communicate better if they knew more about their body language.

Yukio: Let's ask Miss Wang and Ms. Jones if they will help us with our research.

Jane: That is a good idea. Goodbye, Kangkang. Goodbye, Yukio.

Kangkang and Yukio: (*Waving*) Goodbye, Jane.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. When Yukio says "Hi" he waves his hand. ( )
2. Bowing is a sign of peace. ( )
3. When Miss Wang puts her hands on her hips, she will punish students. ( )
4. When Jane's sister stamps her foot, she may be angry. ( )
5. The three kids are talking about body language. ( )

1c **Read 1a and fill in the blanks.**

Waving and bowing are examples of_____ language. In Japan, people bow as a sign of _____. In Canada, people wave as a sign of _____ and _____. In all cultures, people smile when they are _____. Body language can mean different things in different _____. If we understood body language from different countries, we could _____ better.

2a **Look at these gestures that are common in the USA. Discuss and match each gesture with its meaning below.**

ⓐ ⓑ ⓒ ⓓ ⓔ ⓕ

_____ Good luck. _____ It's a secret. _____ Calm down.

_____ I'm puzzled. _____ I'm just kidding. _____ Have a victory.

2b **Do you know any other gestures? In groups, act them out and guess what they mean.**

3 **Put these sentences in the correct order to form a passage.**

(1) Body language means different things in different cultures.

( ) In Canada, nodding your head shows agreement.

( ) But people shake their heads from side to side to show agreement in India.

( ) So, to avoid misunderstandings, you should study both spoken and body languages.

( ) However, in India, men often hold hands as a sign of friendship.

( ) North American men seldom hold hands in public.

( ) For example, the signs of showing agreement and friendship are different from culture to culture.

4 **Discuss the typical body language your teachers/classmates often use with the following questions. Then report to the whole class, paying attention to the pause, liaison and intonation.**

1. What is his/her body language?
2. When is it used?
3. What does it show?

You may begin like this:

Miss Wang's typical body language is… It is a sign of… When she…, she often uses this body language…

Section C

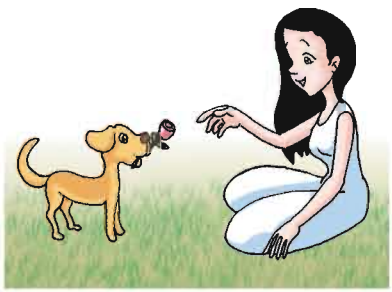
1a **Read and understand.**

Do you know the meaning of each phrase about dogs?

a homeless dog a mad dog a running dog a dog catching a mouse

Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures. Here are some words about animals that are used differently in western cultures and Chinese culture.

Most phrases in Chinese about the dog, such as "a homeless dog", "a mad dog", "a running dog" and "a dog catching a mouse", have negative meanings. But in western countries, dogs are considered honest and good friends of humans. The word, "dog", has positive meanings. For example, "you are a lucky dog" means you are a lucky person. And "every dog has its day" means each person has good luck at times.



As we know, dragons are very important in Chinese culture. In ancient times, dragons were regarded as strong and magical creatures. They brought hope and good luck. The ancient emperors compared themselves to dragons. Nowadays, many parents want their children to become "dragons". But in western cultures, dragons were dangerous animals. Heroes killed them to protect people.

Some things have similar meanings in Chinese culture and western cultures. The rose is regarded as a symbol of love in both China and some western countries. People in China and the West think the rose also stands for peace, courage and friendship. When we pay attention to the cultural meanings of words, we will understand them better.

1b **Read 1a and choose the correct answers.**

1. The title of the passage may be _____.

A. Animals and Plants

B. China and Foreign Countries

C. Different Cultures, Different Meanings

D. Positive and Negative Meanings

2. In China, many parents want their children to become "dragons". The "dragons" here mean _____.

A. successful people B. children C. strong people D. creatures

3. In western countries, heroes killed dragons to protect people. This shows dragons are considered to be _____.

A. brave B. strong C. lovely D. dangerous

4. In Paragraph 3, the underlined word "regarded" means _____.

A. considered B. given C. looked D. watched

1c **Complete the table based on 1a. You can also add something else.**

Plant and animal	In Chinese culture	In western culture
dog		
dragon		
rose		

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the given phrases.**

pay attention to stand for at times regard as compare … to

1. People say the rose often _____ love.
2. Dogs are _____ honest and good friends of humans.
3. You need to _____ the difference more.
4. Robert Burns _____ his love _____ a red rose.
5. Everybody makes mistakes _____.

3 **Write a passage with the title *Different Cultures, Different Meanings* based on the table. You can add more items.**

Plant and animal	In Chinese culture	In western culture
peacock	goodness/beauty/peace	pride
bat	long life/happiness	bad luck
bamboo	happiness/peace	wisdom/power
...		

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and understand the usage of the underlined parts.

Grammar

Showing the Future by Present Continuous

I'm flying to Disneyland.	He is going to London next Sunday.
My uncle is meeting us tomorrow.	When is Bob going to London?

Functions

What's up ?	No need to worry.
Excuse me, could you please give me a ride to the airport?	
Whenever you need help, send me an e-mail or call me.	

How well do you know Sections A-C ? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Read the passage and put the sentences in the correct places.

A. It is possible to tell whether a person is American or British by listening to his or her speech.
B. Now, English is the language spoken by most people in countries like Canada, America and Australia.
C. They also borrowed "tofu" and "kowtow" from Chinese.
D. Sometimes different people use different words to mean the same thing.

English is spoken by people in many places. It began in England but spread as the British people left their country and made new homes. _____

After many years, the English language began to change. The changes were mainly expressions and spellings. _____ People in England say "underground" while people in America say "subway". In America an elevator starts on the first floor, but in Britain it starts on the ground floor. "Colour" and "centre" are British spellings while "color" and "center" are American spellings for the same words. Pronunciation of words and ways of speaking have changed as well. _____

The English language has also changed by borrowing words from other languages. The Americans borrowed "cent" from old French and "cookbook" from German. _____

The English language is changing all the time, but people from English-speaking countries are still able to understand each other.

1b Read 1a again and mark T (True) or F (False).

1. English is the language spoken by most people in Canada, America and Australia. ( )
2. The English language has changed little in the past few centuries. ( )
3. American English is totally different from British English. ( )
4. It's possible for people from English-speaking countries to understand each other in English. ( )

Project

Dealing With Wang Junfeng's Difficulties

1. Read the letter and find out Wang Junfeng's difficulties in English communication.

A. Expressions B. Body language C. Accent D. Spelling

Dear Michael,

How are you doing? I'm writing to you from California. I want to know some differences between British English and American English, especially in expressions, because I have difficulty in understanding the people here. Sometimes I can't follow them. Even worse, I can't understand some of their body language and spelling. Please write back to me soon.

Best wishes to you and your family!

Yours,
Wang Junfeng

2. Discuss how to deal with Wang Junfeng's difficulties.

3. Help Michael write back to him.

TOPIC 3 Could you give us some advice on how to learn English well?

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

Li Ming: How nice to see you back, Junfeng! How was your trip?

Wang Junfeng: Wonderful! I've been to many places of interest and I enjoyed myself in Disneyland.

Li Hong: Could you make yourself understood in the USA?

Wang Junfeng: Not really. Sometimes I got into trouble. They spoke too quickly for me and there were many different accents. I couldn't have long conversations with the people there. I think I should work harder at English.

Li Ming: Yes, I agree. I know oral English is very important, but I dare not speak English in public. And I always feel sleepy in English classes. I'm really afraid of the final exam.

Li Hong: I'm afraid, too. And it's very difficult for me to remember new words.

Wang Junfeng: Me, too. I've worked hard at it for a whole week, but it seems that I haven't made any progress. I don't know what to do. At times I feel like giving up.

Li Hong: Please don't let these difficulties discourage you. Perhaps we can ask Kangkang for help. He is good at English.

1b Listen to 1a and number the problems.

_____ It seems that I haven't made any progress, though I work hard.
_____ It's too difficult for me to remember new words.
_____ I dare not speak English in public.
_____ Americans spoke too quickly.
_____ I couldn't have long conversations with American people.
_____ I always feel sleepy in English classes.

1c **Read 1a and tick the words you find in it. Study the words and pay attention to the word formation.**

( ) wonder	( ) wonderful	( ) under	( ) understand
( ) quick	( ) quickly	( ) courage	( ) discourage
( ) real	( ) really	( ) sleep	( ) sleepy

2 **Write down new words in the brackets by following the example.**

re + tell	(retell)	direct + tion	(direction)
dis + cover	( )	ill + ness	( )
dis + like	( )	develop + ment	( )
in + direct	( )	wonder + ful	( )
im + possible	( )	home + less	( )
un + healthy	( )	excite + ing	( )
un + happy	( )	snow + y	( )
head + ache	( )	main + ly	( )
grand + daughter	( )	film + maker	( )
fire + place	( )	down + stairs	( )

3a **Listen to the conversation and check Li Ming's difficulties. Then listen again and match them with Miss Wang's suggestions.**

Li Ming's difficulty	Miss Wang's suggestion
( ) 1. can't read English news ____	a. take part in the English Corner
( ) 2. can't pronounce well ____	b. copy new words in a notebook
( ) 3. forgets new words ____	and take it with him
( ) 4. can't always understand the dialog	c. keep a diary in English
when watching English movies ____	d. listen to the tape
( ) 5. isn't good at grammar ____	e. sing English songs
( ) 6. isn't good at writing compositions ____	f. buy a grammar book

3b **Make up conversations in pairs based on 1a and 3a.**

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

Wang Junfeng: Kangkang, could you give us some advice on how to learn English well?

Kangkang: Sure. Two years ago, I was also weak in English. How to improve it was my biggest problem. So I turned to Mr. Brown and I've learned a lot from him.

Wang Junfeng: Great. How do you remember new words?

Kangkang: I always copy new words on pieces of paper, stick them on the walls in my bedroom or in the living room, and read the words aloud when I see them. I change them often. Also, I always read the English words on the objects I see.

Li Hong: That sounds interesting. I'll try it. I always read English textbooks, but some texts are difficult for me. Could you please tell me how to improve my reading ability?

Kangkang: Do more reading. Try to guess the meanings of new words, and get the main idea of the article.

Li Ming: Kangkang, I dare not answer questions in class because I'm afraid of making mistakes.

Kangkang: Don't be shy. Think about your answer, take a deep breath and smile, and then answer the question. Smiling is always helpful.

Li Ming: Thank you. I'll give it a try.

1b Listen to 1a and fill in the blanks. Then check the sentences which use *wh-/how + to do*.

1. Could you give us some advice on _____ to learn English well? ( )
2. How to _____ it was my biggest problem. ( )
3. How do you _____ new words? ( )
4. Could you please tell me how to _____ my reading ability? ( )
5. Try to _____ the meanings of new words, and get the _____ idea of the article. ( )

1c Read 1a and complete the passage.

Kangkang gives his friends some _____ on how to learn English well. Wang Junfeng thinks it is difficult to _____ new words, so Kangkang advises him to _____ new words on pieces of _____ and _____ them on the wall.

Li Hong says she always reads the English textbook but some texts are _____, so she wants to ask about how to _____ her reading ability. Kangkang's suggestion is to read more, _____ the meanings of new words, and get the _____ of the article.

Li Ming dare not answer questions in class because he is afraid of making _____. "Think about your answer, take a deep _____ and _____" is Kangkang 's answer.

2 Study the sentences with *how to* in 1a and complete the sentences with the phrases in the box. Then read them and pay attention to the stress and liaison.

what time to meet them
where to go
whether to go to the party
what to do
which one to buy

Example:

He 'wants to 'go on a 'trip.
He is 'thinking about 'where to 'go .

1. He has 'difficulty in 'learning 'English.
He 'asks Kangkang _____.

2. He is 'going to 'meet his 'friends.
But he 'forgot _____ _____.

3. There are 'many 'kinds of 'toothpaste.
He can't 'decide _____.

4. He 'has a lot of 'work to do.
He is 'wondering _____.

3 Work in pairs and make up a conversation. One of you talks about your difficulties in learning English and the other gives some suggestions.

Section C

TIP
Try to talk about English learning problems, ask questions and share ideas with your teachers and classmates.

1a Read and understand.

Underline the phrases or sentences related to the following words in the passage. Then guess the meanings of these words.

preview review retell translate stick

(*Miss Wang is holding a class meeting on how to learn English. She asks two students to report the results of their discussion.*)

I'm very glad to share our group's opinions with you. Kangkang said that he previewed the day's lesson before class, took notes in class and reviewed them after class. Lin Ping said, "Read a passage. Then try to retell it yourself." Yu Zhen thought studying grammar was important when learning English. I myself prefer watching English movies, though sometimes I can't understand them exactly. These are our opinions. Thank you for listening!

It's an honor to talk with all of you here. Our group agrees with some of Group One's opinions. However, we have some other ideas. Xu Duoduo said that joining an English club was the best way to improve her English. Cheng Le advised us to read a good English newspaper. But she said, "We shouldn't translate every word when we are reading." Shu Yan told us we should speak English with our teachers, classmates and even with foreigners as often as possible. That's all. Thanks.

Good job! You two have told us many good methods. Each of us can use one or more of them. But remember to choose the ones that suit you best. I'm sure that you will make great progress as long as you stick to them. And I think keeping a diary in English is a good way to improve your writing. Also, the chants, songs and riddles in our textbooks are helpful.

1b **Read 1a and fill in the first two columns. Then tick the approaches you agree with.**

Who	Approach	Your opinion
	preview, take notes, review	
Lin Ping		
Yu Zhen		
Student 1	watch English movies	
	join the English club	
Cheng Le		
	speak English with others	
Miss Wang		

1c **Work in pairs and discuss how to learn English based on the table in 1b. You can also add some new approaches of your own.**

2 **Complete the conversation with the correct forms of the given words or phrases in the box.**

agree with share … with review preview advise … to (do) as … as possible

(*Helen is* _____ *her study experience* _____ *Li Hong.*)

Helen: I think _____ can help us better understand a new lesson.

Li Hong: I _____ you. I also take a lot of notes in class.

Helen: We need to _____ what we have learned _____ often _____.

Li Hong: Yeah. Miss Wang always _____ us _____ review our lessons before doing homework.

Helen: Good study methods can help us achieve better results with less effort.

3 **Read Li Ming's question in "Ask About English" column from the website *BBC Learning English* and write back to help him.**

Question:

I'm a shy boy, and I don't like to talk. My spoken English is not good because I'm afraid of answering the teacher's questions in English class. And after class, I have no chance to practice speaking English. What should I do?

Li Ming

Answer:

Hello, Li Ming. It's an interesting question ...

Section D

Read through Sections A-C. Then group the words and fill in the blanks.

Grammar

Word Formation

Derivations	
Compounds	

fireplace, discover, impossible, homeless, development, indirect, exciting, illness, film-maker, retell, unhappy, downstairs, snowy, granddaughter

Wh-/How + to do

I don't know _____ (what/what to) do.

He is thinking about _____ (where to/where) go.

Could you give us some advice on _____ (what to/how to) learn English well?

_____ (How to/Where to) improve it was my biggest problem.

Functions

Could you make yourself _____ (understand/understood) in the USA?

I _____ (dare/dared) not speak English in public.

I'm sure that you will _____(make/made) great progress as long as you stick to them.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a **Read the passage and write a proper title on the line.**

_____

Are you facing problems in learning English? If so, the following two ways will help you to learn it more easily and with more fun!

"I download English songs from the Internet. It has really improved my listening. What's more, I am happier when I study this way," said one junior student. Listening to your favorite English songs is actually an effective way. Before you listen, you can read first and find out what the song is about. While listening, pick some useful words or phrases. A dictionary may also be helpful if necessary.

Watching a movie is another good and interesting way. "It is wonderful to watch movies, and it can help your English a lot!" said a junior three student. "You can also imitate the pronunciation of the actors." So choose your favorite movie before watching. Then have paper and a pen ready as you may want to write down useful words or phrases. In this way, you can increase the number of words and understand the dialogs better.

Enjoy using the two ways, and you are sure to learn faster and do better!

1b **Read 1a and complete the table.**

Way	Step	Effect
listening to songs	1. _____ first and find out _____ the song is about. 2. _____ some words or phrases. 3. Use a _____ if necessary.	1. _____ the listening. 2. Be _____ to study.
watching movies	1. _____ favorite movies. 2. Imitate the _____ pronunciation. 3. Have paper and a pen _____. 4. Write down _____ words or phrases.	Increase the number of _____ and understand _____ better.
By doing so, you will learn English _____ and do _____.		

Project

Solving English Learning Problems

1. Work in groups of four to discuss your English learning problems and give advice based on the table.

Skill	Problem	Advice
listening		
speaking		
reading		
writing		

2. Each group member should choose one skill and then write a paragraph based on your discussion.

3. Each group should combine four paragraphs to form a passage and share it in class.

Review of Unit 3

1 **Tick the number of different pronunciations the underlined letter has in each sentence. Then listen and check your answer. You should also pay attention to the liaison in each sentence.**

1) Please wave your hands after you pack your bag. 4 3 2 1
2) He smiles when he finds the answer to the riddle. 3 2 1
3) I decided to listen to his advice about road accidents. 4 3 2 1
4) Students can communicate with foreigners if they study English well. 3 2 1
5) The model rocket is made of cotton and plastic bottles. 4 3 2 1
6) Nick has lots of maps and dreams of seeing aliens with his own eyes. 4 3 2 1

2 **Complete the passage with the correct forms of the given words or phrases in the box.**

method as long as be weak in communicate take a deep breath retell

Oral English is an important part of learning English. If you _____ it, the following advice may help you. First, you should try your best to speak English in class. Don't be shy. If necessary, just _____ and smile before speaking. Second, you'd better take part in the English Corner and _____ with others as often as possible. Finally, it's also a good way to read aloud or _____ a passage yourself to practice more. _____ you stick to these _____, you will make progress.

3 **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words in the brackets.**

1) Lily's dad _____ (leave for) Japan on business next Monday.
2) They were lost. They didn't know _____ (how, get) to the bus station.
3) Many buildings _____ (build) by the company every year.
4) The new movie, *Avatar,* _____ (enjoy) by lots of children.
5) Chinese _____ (speak) by a large number of people in the world.
6) Mary has to learn _____ (what, do) first.

4 **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words.**

1) Speech is the fastest method of _____ (communicate) between people.
2) I find it _____ (possible) to finish so much work in such a short time.

3) We had a _____ (discuss) about the differences between British English and American English last week.
4) You can speak English very well if you pay more attention to your _____ (pronounce).
5) My parents always _____ (courage) me in my choice of jobs.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Do you believe that your body talks? Body language seems to be more important than spoken or written language. According to a survey by Edward T. Hall in India, in a daily conversation between two persons, less than 35% of the meaning is communicated by words. So, at least 65% of the meaning is shown by our bodies. The following table shows how each body part communicates, according to the survey.

Body part	The way to move	Meaning
head	nodding the head	"Yes" in most countries; "No" in some parts of Greece, Bulgaria, and Turkey
eye	closing eyes	"I'm bored." or "I'm sleepy." in America; "I'm listening and concentrating." in Thailand, Japan, and China
ear	cupping the ear	"I can't hear you." in all countries
	pulling the ear	"You are in my heart." for Navajo Indians
nose	holding the nose	"Something smells bad." in the whole world
	pointing to the nose	"It's me." in Japan
arm	folding arms	"I disagree with what I am hearing."
hand	waving hands	"Hello!" or "Goodbye!"

1) Who did the survey?
2) What does it mean in Japan if somebody closes his eyes when someone else talks?
3) When something smells bad, what do people usually do?
4) How many body languages are mentioned in the passage? What else can you think of?

UNIT 4 Amazing Science

TOPIC 1 When was it invented?

Section A

1a **Listen, look and say.**

Kangkang: Jane, why are you unhappy?

Jane: Because I was not allowed to play computer games last night.

Kangkang: It's bad for your health if you spend too much time on them.

Jane: Maybe you're right.

(*Kangkang shows a model to Jane.*)

Kangkang: Look at this.

Jane: A model rocket! Who made it?

Kangkang: It was made by me.

Jane: Wow! What's it made of?

Kangkang: It's made of metal. Do you know what a rocket is used for?

Jane: Sure. It's used for sending satellites or spaceships into space.

Kangkang: You're right. I've learned a lot about spaceships from Mr. Brown and then I made this model rocket. I wish I could go into space some day.

Jane: I hope your dream will come true.

1b **Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).**

1. Jane is unhappy because she was not allowed to go to a party last night. ( )
2. Kangkang's father made a model rocket for him. ( )
3. The rocket is made of metal. ( )
4. A rocket is used for sending satellites or spaceships into space. ( )

1c **Read 1a and answer the following questions.**

1. Why did Kangkang ask Jane not to spend too much time on computer games?
2. What's a rocket used for?
3. Who taught Kangkang some knowledge about spaceships?
4. What's Kangkang's dream?

2 Follow the examples to make up similar conversations.

lock/metal

paper/wood

Example:

1. A: What's the *lock* made of?
   B: It's made of *metal*.
   A: What's it used for?
   B: It's used for *locking the door*.

2. A: What's the *paper* made from?
   B: It's made from *wood*.
   A: What's it used for?
   B: It's used for *writing on*.

computer desk/wood

chopsticks/bamboo

sweater/cotton

watch/metal

3a A. Listen to the conversations and number the following pictures.

B. Listen again and complete the table.

Invention / Item	laptop	cellphone	digital camera
Material			
Usage			
Year			
Country			

3b Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions based on the table in 3a with passive voice.

Example:

A: What is a laptop made of?

B: It is made of plastic.

A: What is it used for?

B: It is used for studying.

A: When and where was it developed?

B: It was developed in Japan in 1985.

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

Michael: Look, a light bulb!

Jane: Yeah. It is widely used by people everywhere. Do you know when it was invented?

Michael: It was invented in 1879.

Jane: Who invented it?

Michael: Thomas Edison. It's said that he invented more than two thousand things during his life.

Jane: What about the radio?

Michael: The radio was invented by Guglielmo Marconi in 1895. Jane, let's go this way. Look! An airplane, but it's different from today's.

Jane: Yes. It was invented by Wilbur and Orville Wright in 1903.

1b Listen to 1a and choose the correct answers.

( ) 1. Where are Michael and Jane?

A. In the science museum. B. At the school library.

C. In the zoo. D. In the park.

( ) 2. Which object is not mentioned in the conversation?

A. Light bulb. B. Airplane. C. Television. D. Radio.

1c Read 1a and complete the table.

Invention	Inventor	Year
light bulb		
	Guglielmo Marconi	
		1903

1d Discuss with your classmates the inventions listed in 1c. Let them guess which invention you are describing.

You may begin like this:

It is widely used by people everywhere. It was invented in 1879 by Thomas Edison. It's said that…

2 **Fill in the blanks with the proper forms of the given words.**

The first jeans were produced in 1855. At that time, they _____ (not call) jeans and they were just hard-wearing pants designed for workers. The pants _____ (make) of the brown cloth. This kind of cloth _____ usually _____ (use) for making tents. Nowadays, their materials have been changed so that it feels more comfortable. And many different jeans styles _____ also _____ (create). They _____ (design) not only for workers but also for teenagers and women. Later jeans are popular all over the world.

3 **Listen to the three passages. Match the pictures with the following information.**

Invention	Inventor	Year
	A. Karl Benz	a. 1926
	B. John Baird	b. 1876
	C. Alexander Graham Bell	c. 1885

4a **Read the following words. Listen and check the vowels.**

r<u>o</u>cket	c<u>o</u>tton	h<u>o</u>spital	m<u>o</u>del
/ɒ/	/ɒ/	/ɒ/	/ɒ/
s<u>a</u>tellite	c<u>a</u>mera	l<u>a</u>ptop	pl<u>a</u>stic
/æ/	/æ/	/æ/	/æ/

4b **Listen and read the following sentences aloud, paying attention to the stress and intonation. Then use the words in 4a to make up similar conversations.**

A: 'When was the 'digital camera 'developed?
B: It was 'developed in the '1970s.
A: Was the 'digital camera 'developed in 'Korea?
B: 'No.
A: 'Where was it 'developed?
B: It was 'developed in 'Japan.

Section C

1a Read and understand.

Work in groups and discuss the questions before reading. Then read and check.

1. What is an invention?
2. List some inventions that you know and their inventors.
3. Do you think you can be an inventor? Why?

An invention may be a new product or a new way of doing things. Inventions come about in many ways. Most of the time, inventions happen because someone works to solve a problem. Sometimes inventions are the result of accidents. Look at your schoolbags. You have pencils, pens, crayons, rulers and some books. None of these things was planted in fields. They were made in factories and invented by someone. Inventing is interesting and exciting and everyone can be an inventor. Do you want to be an inventor? There are a few simple steps to follow in the invention process.

◆ _____ You can have wild and crazy thoughts. Remember that no idea is too silly. Many people laughed at the Wright brothers and said they would never fly. But they weren't discouraged by what people said. That's why now we have planes.

◆ _____ Careful planning is important in the invention process. This is the time to brainstorm for ideas and to evaluate them.

◆ _____ Make a detailed drawing of your invention so others will understand how your invention works.

◆ Make a model of your invention.

◆ _____ See if your invention works as it is planned. If not, do more research, redesign it, and test it again.

◆ _____ Every invention needs a name.

◆ Share your inventions with others.

1b **Read 1a and put the sentences in the correct places.**

A. Draw your invention. B. Name your invention. C. Test your invention.
D. Use your imagination. E. Plan and design your invention.

1c **Read 1a again and fill in the blanks.**

When you want to have an invention, first you must use your _____. Then you should plan and design it. Careful planning is very _____ in the invention. Third, you should make a _____ drawing of your invention and make a model of it. If you want to make your invention more successful, you must _____ it again and again. After that, you _____ your invention. Last, remember that you should _____ your invention with others.

2 **Discuss with your partner which of the following are the top 3 most important inventions and which is the least important invention. Then explain your choice to the class.**

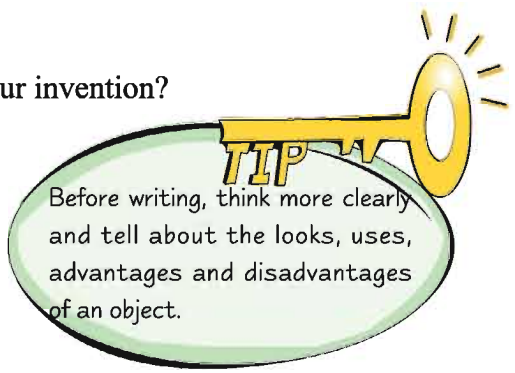
candy	computer	medicine	balloon	gun
robot	lock	scissors	spaceship	zero
chopsticks	light bulb	keyboard	television	X-ray machine

Example:

I think zero is the most important invention. It is said that it was invented by an Indian. It is a very interesting number. For example, I have only ten *yuan*. If you add five zeros after it for me, haha, I will be a rich man.

3 **Do you know how to be an inventor? Do you want to invent something? Write a passage about your invention. The following questions may help you.**

1. How did you come up with the idea of your invention?
2. What does it look like?
3. What is it made of/from?
4. What's it used for?
5. What are you going to name it?



Section D

Read through Sections A-C and pay attention to the underlined parts.

Grammar

Passive Voice (Ⅱ)

The radio was invented by Guglielmo Marconi in 1895.	
When was the digital camera developed?	It was developed in the 1970s.
Where was it developed?	It was developed in Japan.
What is a rocket used for?	It is used for sending satellites or spaceships into space.

Functions

I wish I could go into space some day.
I hope your dream will come true.
It's said that he invented more than two thousand things during his life.
Inventing is interesting and exciting and everyone can be an inventor.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

Read the passage and discuss the questions on Page 88.

Where Are We?

Where are we? That was a big question when we first explored our world long ago. The early explorers found that the stars in the sky were good guiding marks. Using the stars, they could find out where they were and in which direction they were going. This method worked well at night as long as the weather was good and the stars could be seen. But it didn't work so well during the rest of the time. That was a problem.

Today, the problem has been solved by the Global Positioning System(GPS). It is like a man-made star. We can use it at any time, in any place and in any weather to find out our position. It can also be used to study the shape of the earth. The GPS is a great invention that helps us explore our planet and discover where we are.

1. How did the early explorers know where they were?
2. What's the disadvantage of using the stars as guiding marks?
3. What is a GPS? Is it useful to us?
4. What do you think the GPS will be used for in the future?

Project

Describing Your Invention

1. This is Kangkang's invention. Look at the information and the picture. What do you think of it? Discuss with your partners.

Name: Plar (Plane-car)
Inventor: Kangkang
Year: 2014
Use: Both flying and driving

2. Design your own invention. Draw a picture of it and write down the information about it.

Name: _____
Inventor: _____
Year: _____
Use: _____

3. Show the picture of your invention and describe it to the class.

4. Discuss in groups to decide which is the most useful/interesting/funny invention.

TOPIC 2 I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

Kangkang: Hi, Maria! A wonderful movie will be shown tonight. Shall we go to watch it?

Maria: Great! What's it about?

Kangkang: It's about life in space.

Maria: That sounds exciting.

Kangkang: Yes. All the people travel by spaceship in the movie, and they can visit planets like Mars.

Maria: Really? Kangkang, do you think people will live on Mars in the future?

Kangkang: Yes. I think we will live in space one day. Houses, schools and hospitals will be built on Mars. We will be able to do anything that can be done on the earth.

Maria: What fun! I can't wait.

1b Listen to 1a and answer the questions. Then check the answers in pairs.

1. When will the movie be shown?
2. What's the movie about?
3. How do people travel in the movie?
4. What will be built on Mars according to Kangkang?

1c Read 1a and complete Maria's diary.

December 8th, Tuesday Cloudy

Kangkang and I are excited, because a wonderful movie _____ tonight. The poster says it's about _____. In the movie, all the people travel _____and they can visit _____.

Kangkang thinks we will live _____ one day. Houses, schools and hospitals _____ on Mars. We will be able to do _____ that can be done on earth. I think we will be able to fly everywhere in the future. I hope our dreams of space travel will come true.

2a **Study the rules carefully and complete the table.**

Item \ Year	Now	2048
Houses and hospitals	are built on the earth.	will be built on Mars.
Buses and taxis	_____ by men (drive).	_____ by robots.
Trees and flowers	_____ (plant, in the soil).	_____ (in the air).

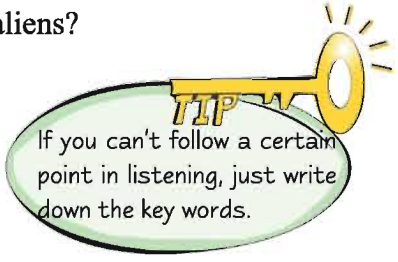
2b **Work in pairs. Look at the picture and talk about what will happen on Mars in 2048. Then complete the passage with the correct forms of the given words.**

Look at the picture of what will happen in 2048. Many tall buildings _____ (build) under the sea. A lot of animals _____ (keep) in the water. Now books _____ (print) on the paper. But in 2048 books _____ (display) on soft screens. Schoolbags and pens _____ (use) at schools now. But, computers _____ (use) by teachers and students in the future. Many spaceships _____(send) into space. Some scientists believe that aliens _____ (find) in outer space.

3 **A. Listen to the conversation and answer the following questions.**

1. Does Kangkang believe there are aliens? What about Maria?
2. What does the American scientist think about aliens?

B. Listen again and fill in the blanks.



(*Maria and Kangkang are talking after watching the movie.*)

Maria: Do you believe there are aliens?

Kangkang: I'm _____.

Maria: But some scientists think there are aliens. One American scientist thinks they have already_____, and they are reading information _____in order to learn about human culture.

Kangkang: Aliens are described and discussed by many people. But I don't think aliens _____ in space.

Maria: You're probably right. I won't believe there are aliens until I see them _____.

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

Kangkang: Maria, have you heard the news on TV about the space flight to Mars?

Maria: No, I haven't. Who will take part in the space flight?

Kangkang: Astronauts from China, the United States and Russia. They will travel into space and discover something new about Mars. I really admire them. I'd like to be an astronaut when I grow up.

Maria: It's really cool. However, I think you should first master some basic computer skills.

Kangkang: Sure. Maria, what are you going to be?

Maria: Mm, I am not sure. Sometimes I want to be a dancer, but I think I'm going to be a scientist in the future.

Kangkang: Why? I think you dance very well.

Maria: Yes, I'm sure I can perform ballet on the stage in the future. But I prefer science to dance. It is my favorite subject in school. I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

Kangkang: That's wonderful! Let's work hard. Then our dreams will be realized.

1b Listen to 1a and mark T (True) or F (False).

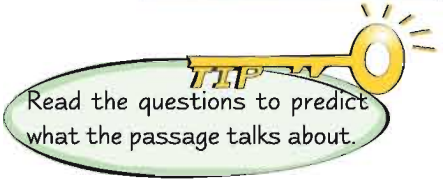
1. Astronauts from China, the United States and Russia will take part in the space flight. ( )
2. Kangkang wants to be a scientist in the future. ( )
3. Kangkang thinks Maria can dance very well. ( )
4. Maria prefers dance to science. ( )

1c Read 1a and complete the sentences.

1. Something new about Mars _____ by the astronauts.
2. Some basic computer skills _____ by Kangkang.
3. I'm excited about the things _____ in the future.
4. Their dreams _____ if they work hard.

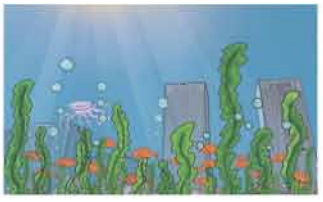
2 Listen to the passage and choose the correct answers.

1. How many shapes of UFOs were mentioned?
   A. Four. B. Five. C. Six.
2. In which area of China did the UFOs often appear?
   A. Nanjing. B. South China.
   C. The north of Changjiang River.
3. Why do people know little about UFOs?
   A. UFOs have been met by so many people.
   B. There are various shapes of UFOs.
   C. A UFO is only met by chance and disappears rapidly.



3a Look at the pictures and complete the sentences by following the example. Then read the dialogs aloud and pay attention to the stress and intonation.

Example:
A: 'How is the 'cake, 'Jane?
B: 'Just a 'minute. It will be 'finished 'very 'soon.



A: The 'article 'says the 'houses _____ under the 'sea in the near 'future.
B: It's really 'cool to 'live under the 'sea.

A: Can you 'believe it? Our 'car _____ by 'robots in the 'future?
B: It 'sounds 'great.

A: Have you 'heard the 'news on 'TV? More 'planets _____ in the 'universe.
B: 'No, I haven't. I think 'most of our 'dreams _____ in the 'future.

3b Make up your own dialogs about the future with the structure underlined in 3a.

Section C

1a Read and understand.

Look at the pictures and predict which statements are true about Mars. Then read the passage quickly and check the answers.

_____ 1. Mars looks like a red ball.
_____ 2. The temperature on Mars is very high.
_____ 3. Mars is much larger than the earth.
_____ 4. Mars is too far away for us to reach.

What do you know about Mars? What does it look like?

Mars is the fourth planet from the sun in our solar system and is named after Mars, the Roman god of war. Its diameter is 53% as wide as that of the earth. Mars goes around the sun at a distance of about 228 million kilometers. You can tell which planet is Mars because it is bright red in the night sky. It looks like a red and orange ball. It's very beautiful. But during spring and summer, the surface of Mars is covered by strong storms. The gravity

on the surface of Mars is about two-fifths as strong as it is on earth. So a person who weighs 90 kilos on earth weighs only 36 kilos on Mars. The temperature on Mars is between -138℃ and 28℃. The air has only 0.13% oxygen.

It takes a spaceship about eight months to reach Mars from the earth when the two planets are closest to each other. Scientists are still searching for more information about Mars.

1b Read 1a again and write down the information about Mars.

Diameter	Color	Shape
Climate	**Gravity**	**Distance from the sun**

1c **Discuss the crazy questions with your partner and state your reasons.**

1. Does Mars have a good climate for plants?
2. Is Mars a useful place to dry fruit?
3. Is Mars a good place for human beings to live?
4. Is Mars a comfortable place for heavy people?

2 **Kangkang's uncle sent an e-mail to him from Mars. Choose the right words to complete the letter.**

主题: The journey has gone very well.

Bernhard Fashion BT 14

Hi Kangkang,

It has been two days _____ (since, from) we landed on Mars. It _____ (cost, took) us more than two years to _____ (leave, get) here. Generally, the journey went well, but the living conditions were _____ (quiet, quite) bad during the journey. We had to produce most of the food in the spaceship. _____(What's more, What's worse), our water supplies were very low. We had to limit the use of water during _____ (these, those) days. So we had a shower every six weeks. We will spend another seven hundred and sixty-three days on Mars. _____ (How, What) a long time! I often miss the family, but the excitement of being on Mars is worth it!

Wish me luck!

Yours,

Uncle Stephen

3a **Write back an e-mail to Uncle Stephen for Kangkang and ask him for more information about Mars. The list may help you.**

- clothing
- food and drinks
- weather
- transportation
- …

3b **Work in pairs. Check your partner's e-mail and use your knowledge of Mars to answer the questions for Uncle Stephen.**

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and understand the underlined parts.

Grammar

Passive Voice (III)

A wonderful movie will be shown tonight.
I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

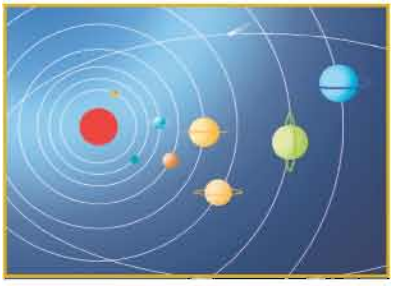
Functions

We will be able to do anything that can be done on the earth.
I think you should first master some basic computer skills.
Let's work hard. Then our dreams will be realized.

How well do you know Sections A-C? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Read the passage and choose a proper title.

1. Is There Life Out There? 2. Our Planet 3. The Stars at Night

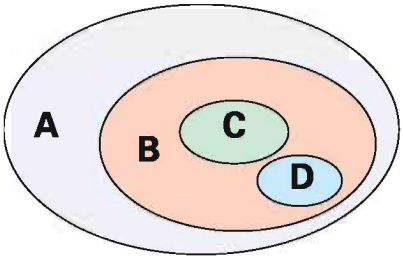


Scientists think that there has been life on earth for millions of years. However, we haven't found life on other planets yet. The earth is a planet and it goes around the sun. And there are seven other planets that also go around the sun. The sun and its planets are called the solar system. The solar system is a small part of the universe.

Scientists have launched many spaceships to explore other planets in the solar system. Some spaceships have gone beyond the solar system. However, no one has discovered any life in space yet.

Why has no one from other planets sent us a message? Have they tried to send information to us? With so many stars in space, are we alone, or is there life on other planets in space?

1b **Match the letters in the picture with their names according to 1a.**



( ) 1. the solar system
( ) 2. the earth
( ) 3. the universe
( ) 4. the sun

2 **A spaceship will be sent out to find aliens in outer space. A letter will be put on the spaceship to introduce our earth. Discuss in groups and write a short introduction of the earth. Then present it to the class.**

3 **If aliens are found in the near future, what changes will happen to people on the earth? Discuss in groups and make a list of all the possibilities.**

Example:

More aliens will be found with the help of our new friends.

Students will be sent to their planet to learn their language.

…

Project

Reporting on the Celestial Body You Like to Live on

1. Divide the class into three groups: Mars, the moon, the earth.

Mars

Moon

Earth

2. Discuss the life there, such as clothing, food and drink, transportation ...
3. Choose one student in each group to introduce the information to the class.
4. Think about which celestial body you would like to live on and give a report to the class.

TOPIC 3 China is the third nation that sent a person into space.

Section A

1a Listen, look and say.

(*Michael and Kangkang are in the Science Museum.*)

Michael: Kangkang, who is the first Chinese to travel into space?

Kangkang: Yang Liwei. He is our national hero who traveled around the earth in *Shenzhou V* for 21 hours in 2003. China is the third nation that sent a person into space.

Michael: Wonderful! All of you must be very proud.

Kangkang: Of course we are. What's more, we have launched another four spaceships in the past few years.

Michael: That's great! It proves that China has made great progress in its space industry.

Kangkang: That's right. I'm sure that China will send more spaceships into space.

Michael: Look, what a large crowd! Let's go and see.

Kangkang: Wow! *Chang'e I*. It's a spaceship which was launched as China's first lunar probe. I hope I can travel to the moon one day.

Michael: I think your dream will be realized in the future.

1b Listen to 1a and tick the expressions you hear.

_____ travel into space
_____ aliens
_____ *Shenzhou V*
_____ launched
_____ make great progress
_____ lunar probe
_____ travel to the moon
_____ space walk

1c Read 1a and answer the questions.

1. Who is Yang Liwei?
2. How long did *Shenzhou V* travel around the earth?
3. How many spaceships has China sent into space?
4. What is *Chang'e I*?
5. Do you know the legend of Chang'e? Please tell it to your partner.

2 Study the change of the following sentences. Then try to find the rules and fill in the blanks.

1. Yang Liwei is our national hero.
   He traveled around the earth in *Shenzhou V* for 21 hours in 2003.
   Yang Liwei is our national hero ***who/that*** traveled around the earth in *Shenzhou V* for 21 hours in 2003.
2. Wang Yaping is a woman astronaut.
   She gave us a lesson in *Shenzhou X* spaceship.
   Wang Yaping is a woman astronaut _____.
3. *Shenzhou X* is a spaceship.
   It was launched with three astronauts in 2013.
   _____.

3 Listen to the passage and fill in the blanks.

China's First Man-made Satellite *Dongfanghong I*
Launch time: _____
Launch place: _____ Satellite Launch Center
Development team: many scientists under _____
Significance: • becoming the _____ country to independently launch a satellite • stepping into _____ • being a landmark of China's _____

4 Choose the correct forms of the given words to complete the passage.

Neil Alden Armstrong was born on August 5, 1930. He was an American astronaut _____ (which/who) was the first man to set foot on the moon. During his life, he took part in two space flights. On July 20, 1969, his second and last space flight was in a famous spaceship _____(which/who) was named *Apollo 11*. Along with his partner, Buzz Aldrin, Armstrong had a spacewalk and then _____ (lands/landed) on the lunar surface. They spent 2.5 hours _____ (exploring/to explore) and collecting soil and rocks to take back to earth. On July 24th, they returned to the earth _____ (safe/safely).

Section B

1a Look, listen and say.

(*Kangkang is asking Mr. Brown something about spaceships.*)

Kangkang: Spaceships are so amazing. Mr. Brown, could you please tell me some recent spaceship developments?

Mr. Brown: OK. Spaceships which now mainly use electronic controls used to be controlled by astronauts.

Kangkang: But how do they work?

Mr. Brown: Astronauts use computers to control the speed and direction of their spaceships, even the temperature.

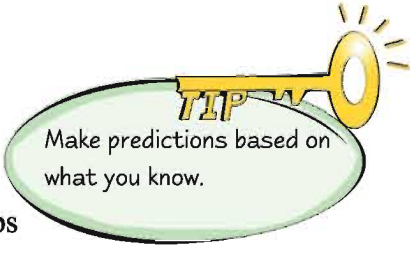
Kangkang: Perfect! But I know so little about computer technology.

Mr. Brown: It's important to master computer technology. So I advise you to discover new ways to make computers serve us better.

Kangkang: Good idea. Thanks for your introduction, Mr. Brown. I think that if I work hard then nothing is impossible.

1b What can computers do to spaceships? Tick the possibilities and then listen to 1a to check your answers.

( ) 1. make food for astronauts
( ) 2. change the speed of spaceships
( ) 3. control the direction of spaceships
( ) 4. control the temperature of spaceships



1c Read 1a and fill in the blanks.

Kangkang wanted to know something about recent spaceship developments. Mr. Brown told him that spaceships used to be _____ by astronauts and now mainly use _____ controls. Then he explained to Kangkang that the speed and _____ of spaceships as well as the temperature are controlled by computers. Kangkang then realized he knew little about computer technology. Mr. Brown

_____ him to learn to use computers well and make computers _____ us better in the future. Kangkang made up his mind to work hard to_____ computer technology.

2 **A. Listen to four short passages and number the pictures. The words below the pictures may help you.**

food ( ) spacesuit ( ) telescope ( ) machine ( )

B. Listen again and fill in the blanks.

1. A spacesuit is like a very small _____.
2. Astronauts add _____ to _____ to make it bigger.
3. On earth, we can look at the _____ through telescopes.
4. _____ are training on a special machine. It _____ them through the air.

3 **Read the following sentences and complete them with *that, which, who*.**

1. Do you know Neil Armstrong _____ was the first man to set foot on the moon?
2. This is the spaceship _____ the astronauts use in space.
3. In all big cities, there are things _____ tourists shouldn't miss!
4. He is a man _____ means what he says.

4 **Listen and read the attributive clauses, paying attention to the pause, weak form and intonation.**

1. China is the third nation/that sent a person into space.
2. Yang Liwei is our national hero/who traveled around the earth in *Shenzhou V* for 21 hours in 2003.
3. Spaceships/which use electronic controls/used to be controlled by astronauts.
4. *Chang'e I* is a spaceship/which was launched as China's first lunar probe.
5. More and more people have personal computers/that are used to play games and watch movies.

Section C

1a Read and understand.

1.Tick the fields we use the computer in.

☐ education	☐ business	☐ industry	☐ communication
☐ daily life	☐ medical care	☐ entertainment	☐ sports

2. Can you give an example of the use of the computer in one of the fields above?

The Importance of Computers

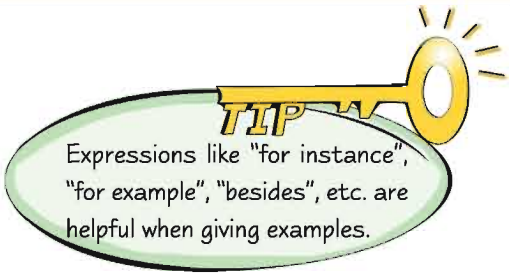
Since computers were invented in the USA in the 1950s, they have become very important in many areas of work and leisure. There is no doubt that computers are very useful in technology and business.

In space, computers have been used to control the speed and direction of a spaceship. With the help of computers, doctors can find diseases easily and solve other problems. For example, tiny computers which are inside patients' bodies can keep their hearts beating normally. In factories, robots are controlled by computers that are like human brains. They can do work that is dangerous to humans. In business, computers are used to place and cancel orders. They are also making the workplace safer and better.

Since the Internet came into being, people's lives at home have been changed, too. More and more people have personal computers that are used to play games and watch movies. Thanks to the Internet, people can do shopping and do business at home. Instead of writing letters on paper, people communicate by sending e-mails and chatting online. The whole world is connected. The Internet is making the world smaller, like a village.

Computers have improved our lives, but they have brought problems, too. For instance, if we work on computers too long, we may get headaches or sore eyes. If we play computer games too much, we won't have enough time to study

or exercise. Besides, not everything we read on the Internet is true or good for us. Computers help us at work and at home, but they must be used properly.



1b **Read 1a and complete the following tasks.**

1. Underline the topic sentence of each paragraph.
2. Complete the following diagram.

- computers
  - usage
    - work
      1. _____ of a spaceship
      2. help doctors _____
      3. _____ in factories
      4. help businessmen _____
    - daily life
      1. play games and _____
      2. _____ and _____ at home
      3. _____ by sending e-mails and _____
  - problem
    1. get headaches or _____
    2. don't have enough time _____
    3. something on the Internet is not _____

2 **Write a short passage with the title *One Day Without Computers*. The following information may help you.**

Suppose you were on a special day in 2030. During the day, there were no computers in the world. What trouble would you have? You may begin like this:

One Day Without Computers

Today, when I got up, I just turned on the computer as usual, but it didn't work. Then I tried my brother's PC, my parents', even my dog's, but none of them worked. Later, it was reported on TV that all of the computers in the world broke down today ...

Section D

Read through Sections A-C and understand the colored parts.

Grammar

Attributive Clause (I)

He is our national hero who/that traveled around the earth in *Shenzhou V* for 21 hours in 2003.

China is the third nation that sent a person into space.

More and more people have personal computers that/which are used to play games and watch movies.

Functions

All of you must be very proud.

It proves that China has made great progress in its space industry.

There is no doubt that computers are very useful in technology and business.

The Internet is making the world smaller, like a village.

Computers help us at work and at home, but they must be used properly.

How well do you know Sections A-C ? Now do the following tasks and check.

1a Discuss the following questions before reading. Then read and check.

1. Do you like robots? Why or why not?
2. If you had a robot, what would you like it to do for you?

Robots—Our Servants in the Future?

What will our future be like? No one knows for certain, but most people think that robots will be part of our lives. Will they be friendly or unfriendly?

So far, robots haven't caused us any problems. They work for us like servants all the time. They help us do dangerous and difficult work.

People are surprised at the rapid development of robots. In a few years, perhaps robots will think on their own, just as people use their brains and act for themselves. However, once robots can think for themselves, problems may appear. One scientist warns that if robots start to think for themselves, they will no longer

want to be our servants, but our masters. The scientist also warns that if we are lucky, they might treat us as we now treat our pets; if we are not lucky, who knows what will happen? Perhaps there will be a war between human beings and robots.

1b **Find the words in the passage according to the following meanings. The first letter is given to help you.**

1. to tell somebody about danger or about something bad that may happen w_____
2. to make something happen or appear c_____
3. a person who is paid to do housework for a family s_____
4. sure and confident, without any doubts c_____
5. used to say that something may be true, but you are not sure p_____

1c **Read 1a again and discuss the questions with your partner.**

1. Do you think that robots will be part of our lives in the future? Why?

_____

2. Robots are considered to be our servants, aren't they?

_____

3. Do you think robots can think or act for themselves?

_____

4. Why does the title have a question mark?

_____

Project

Making a Wall Newspaper About Computer Information

1. **Collect the following information from books, newspapers, the Internet and so on.**
   - ☆ the parts of the computer
   - ☆ the kinds of computers
   - ☆ the development of the computer
2. **Discuss the uses of computers in daily life and technology in groups.**
3. **Design a wall newspaper about the computer.**

Review of Units 3–4

1 **Listen to the joke and mark the intonation of the questions. Then practice telling the joke and pay attention to the sense group.**

A Story of a French Student

A French student went to London on vacation. He thought, "I know a little English. Can people understand me?"

One morning, he went to a restaurant and sat down at the table. Soon the waitress came to him. "Can I help you, sir?" asked the waitress. "I'd like a cup of tea and…" He could not remember the English word "egg". He looked around, but nobody was eating eggs.

Then he saw a magazine on the table next to him. There was a picture of a rooster on its cover. "What's the English for this?" the student asked. "A rooster, sir." "What do you call a rooster's wife?" "A hen, sir," answered the waitress. "And what do you call a hen's children?" "Do you mean chicks, sir?" "Yes. Before chicks are born, what do you call them?" "Eggs, sir." "Very well. Bring me two eggs and a cup of tea, please."

He sat back with a smile on his face.

2 **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given words in the box.**

realize dry search silence offer communicate

1) Shh! Keep _____! The headmaster is speaking.
2) He _____ some useful advice on how to solve this problem.
3) Be careful. The paint hasn't _____ yet.
4) He spent a lot of time _____ for information about Canada last night.
5) She feels upset because she hasn't _____ her dream.
6) She is shy. She doesn't know how _____ with others.

3 **Complete the passage with *that, which* or *who*.**

Have you seen the film _____ is called *Kungfu Panda*? This film mainly tells us a story _____ happened in ancient China. One of the main characters in it is a panda _____ is very fat but cute. He has quite a few friends _____ helped him struggle to bring

peace back to the land. Many people _____ have seen the film like it very much.

4 Change the following sentences into ones that have the same meaning.

1) I don't know what I shall do next.
   I don't know _____ next.
2) Mr. Green hasn't decided when he leaves for Canada.
   Mr. Green hasn't decided _____ Canada.
3) Do you know where we're going to meet tomorrow?
   Do you know _____ tomorrow?
4) The man asked which bus he would take to the Summer Palace.
   The man asked _____ to the Summer Palace.

5 Fill in the blanks with the given words, using the passive voice.

1) A: _____ he _____ to Lily's birthday party last night?
   B: Sorry, I don't know. (invite)
2) A: Have you watered those flowers, Tim?
   B: No, I haven't. But those flowers _____by my grandpa yesterday morning. (water)
3) A: What do you think of this book?
   B: Wonderful! It _____ by many teenagers. (enjoy)
4) A: The class meeting _____ this afternoon. Are you ready for it?
   B: Yes. We're all ready for it. (hold)
5) A: Where would you like to go?
   B: I'd like to go to the Tower of London . Long ago, it _____ as a prison for important prisoners. (use)

6 Listen to the passage and mark T (True) or F (False).

1) Li Hua likes reading English newspapers and magazines. ( )
2) Li Hua is good at grammar. ( )
3) Li Hua has difficulty in writing. ( )
4) Li Hua writes twelve new words on pieces of paper and sticks them on the walls in her bedroom to remember them. ( )
5) Li Hua changes the learning method if it doesn't work. ( )

7 **Listen to the conversation and complete the sentences.**

1) Kris thinks the light bulb is the _____ invention.
2) Anna thinks inventions make our life _____.
3) Anna thinks more inventions are needed to _____ social problems like pollution.
4) Kris wants to invent a car that doesn't produce _____.
5) The car named Go-Car would run on _____ instead of gas.

8 **Choose the correct sentences from the box to complete the conversation and practice it with your partner.**

A. My pronunciation is poor.
B. I did badly in the English exam.
C. Thank you for your advice.
D. Then, how do you improve your reading?
E. First, I'm always afraid of speaking English in public.
F. How can you improve your writing ability?
G. Could you help me with it?

Lily: Why are you unhappy today, Tom?
Tom: _____ It's hard for me to learn English. _____
Lily: Yes, I'd love to. What's your problem?
Tom: _____
Lily: Don't be shy. You should be brave and believe in yourself. You can often go to the English Corner to practice your oral English. Once you say out loud what you learn, you won't easily forget it.
Tom: Really? I'll try that way. _____
Lily: I often read English stories and novels. They not only improve my reading but also enlarge (make something bigger) my vocabulary. Reading is an important way to learn English well.
Tom: _____ But I'm still ...
Lily: Cheer up. You can do a good job.
Tom: OK, I'll do as you said and never give up.

9 Read the passage and answer the questions.

There are many words in the English language that have been borrowed from the French language. Some of the words are so common in English that people think they are English words. These words are used in English around the world, not just in Canada where English and French are used side by side. An example of this sort of word is "fiancé" (/ˌfiːɑːnˈseɪ/). It means the man that a woman has agreed to marry. Another example is the word, "bouquet" (/bʊˈkeɪ/). It means a bunch of cut flowers. The English language has become more interesting because it has borrowed some French words.

1) Are there many words in English borrowed from French?
2) What's the Chinese meaning of "fiancé"?
3) What is the English meaning of the word "bouquet"?
4) What other English words are borrowed from other languages?

10 Written work.

A. Work in groups and describe the following pictures to your group members.

B. Write a passage with the title *The Advantages of Knowing a Foreign Language*.

Appendices 附录

Notes to the Texts 课文注释

Unit 1 The Changing World

Topic 1 Our country has developed rapidly.

Section A

1. — Where have you been, Jane? 你去了哪里,简?
   — I have been to Mount Huang with my parents. 我和我的父母去了黄山。
   have/has been to... 意为"(某人)曾经到过……"。如:
   She has been to Beijing. 她曾经去过北京。
2. She has gone to Cuba to be a volunteer ... 她去古巴当志愿者了……
   have/has gone to... 表示"(某人)已经去……了,现在不在这里(说话的地点)"。如:
   — Where is your brother? 你哥哥去哪儿了?
   — He has gone to the supermarket. 他去超市了。(他现在不在这里。)

Section B

1. You took part in some volunteer activities during summer holidays, didn't you? 你在暑假参加了一些志愿者活动,是吗?

此句为反意疑问句。反意疑问句即附加疑问句,由两部分构成:前一部分是对事物的陈述,后一部分是简略的问句。前者用肯定形式,后者一般用否定形式;反之亦然。如:

It's a nice day, isn't it? 今天天气不错,不是吗?

Ann didn't use to live there, did she? 安过去不曾住在那儿,对吗?

2. Though I had no time to travel, I still felt very happy. 虽然我没有时间去旅行,但我仍然感到很开心。

连词 though/although 和 even though/even if 意为"虽然,尽管,即使",引导让步状语从句,通常不与 but 连用。如:

Though/Although my daughter is only ten years old, she knows a lot. 虽然我的女儿只有十岁,但她懂得很多事情。

Even though/Even if the work was hard, they enjoyed themselves. 尽管这工作很辛苦,他们还是自得其乐。

even if 和 even though 带有强调的意味,语气较强;though 和 although 语气较弱,而 though 比 although 更口语化,不如 although 正式。

Section C

People kept in touch with their friends and relatives far away mainly by letter or telegram. 人们主要通过信件或电报与远方的亲戚朋友保持联系。

keep in touch with... 与……保持联系
get in touch with... 与……取得联系
lose touch with... 与……失去联系 如:
You can get in touch with me at any time if necessary. 如果有必要,你可以随时与我取得联系。
I've lost touch with most of my friends in college. 我已经和大学时的大多数朋友失去了联系。

Section D

1. Leisure activities are the kinds of things people like to do to relax and enjoy themselves when they are not working or going to school. 休闲活动是人们不上班或不上学的时候用以放松和自娱的活动。

people like to do to relax and enjoy themselves 是定语从句,修饰 things。

2. Many people stay at home having a rest, reading books and watching TV. 很多人待在家里休息、看书和看电视。

having a rest, reading books and watching TV 是现在分词短语作伴随状语。

Topic 2 The population in developing countries is growing faster.

Section A

— I really hate going to a place like that. 我真的讨厌去那种地方。

— So do I. 我也是。

So do I.是倒装句,表示前面提到的肯定情况也同样适合另外一个人或物,结构为“so+be/情态动词/助动词+主语”。如:

— They can swim well. 他们游泳很棒。

— So can we. 我们也游得很好。

如果表示上文提到的否定情况也同样适合另外一个人或物,则用“neither/nor+be/情态动词/助动词+主语”。如:

— I don't like the weather here. 我不喜欢这儿的天气。

— Neither/Nor does she. 她也不喜欢。

Section B

1. What a large population! 人口真多啊!

population 是名词,可以用 large/big/small 等形容词修饰;population 作主语时,谓语动词常用单数形式;针对人口数量提问时,特殊疑问词用 what。如:

The population of China is very large. 中国人口众多。

—What's the population of China? 中国有多少人口?

—China has a population of 1.37 billion. 中国有十三亿七千万人口。

2. And it is increasing by 90 million every year. 它(世界人口)在以每年九千万的幅度增长。

increase by 意为“增加了,增长了”。如:

The price of oil increased by 2%. 石油的价格增长了 2%。

3. So it is. 的确是这样。

so+主语+be/助动词/情态动词,表示对上文情况的肯定和同意,意为“确实如此”。如:

—John studies very hard. 约翰学习十分刻苦。

—So he does. 他确实很刻苦。

—Jane can speak English. 简会说英语。

—So she can. 她确实会。

Section C

1. ...about one fifth of the people in the world live in China. ……世界上大约五分之一的人生活在中国。

one fifth 是分数。英文分数表达方法:分子用基数词,分母用序数词,先读分子后读分母;当分子大于 1 时,分母的序数词用复数形式,直接在词尾加“s”。如:

$\frac{1}{3}$ one third $\frac{2}{5}$ two fifths $\frac{1}{2}$ a/one half

$3\frac{1}{2}$ three and a/one half $\frac{1}{4}$ one fourth/a quarter

$\frac{3}{4}$ three fourths/three quarters

2. One was known as the one-child policy. 其中一项措施是独生子女政策。

be known as… 为固定短语,意为“已知的,知名的”。如:

The village is known as Garden Mill. 该村就是为人熟知的米尔花园。

Section D

1. I live in a small mountain town called Fairmont. 我住在一个叫菲尔蒙特的小山城。

called Fairmont 是过去分词短语作定语,修饰 town。

2.The small town is surrounded by trees. 小城四周绿树环绕。

be surrounded by 意为“被……所环绕”。如:

The city is surrounded by mountains. 那座城市四面环山。

Topic 3 The world has changed for the better.

Section A

1. You have been in New York for a long time. 你在纽约已很长时间了。

(1)have/has been in… 表示到目前为止状态的持续。如:

He has been in this company for three years. 他已经在这家公司三年了。

(2)for 和表示一段时间的词组连用时,句中谓语动词通常使用延续性动词(否定式除外)。如:

I have been here for a few days.我已经到这儿几天了。

2. … but the city has improved a lot since I came here a few years ago. ……但是自从我几年前来到这里,这个城市已经有了很大的发展。

since 意为“从……以后,自……以来”,所引导的从句一般要用非延续性动词,主句用完成时态。如:

She has been working since she finished school. 她从学校毕业以后一直在工作。

since 作介词时,后面要接时间点,不接时间段。如:

We've lived here since 1990. 自 1990 年以来我们一直住在这里。

3. As a matter of fact, it's a wonderful place to live. 实际上,这是个居住的好地方。

动词不定式 to live 在此作 place 的定语。动词不定式作定语时,它与所修饰的词之间往往有动宾关系,如果该不定式是不及物动词,或者其本身有宾语,后面应有必要的介词。如:

I have no friends to talk with. 我没有可以交谈的朋友。

但当动词不定式所修饰的名词是 place 时,不定式后面通常没有介词。如:

Two days after I arrived in New York, I found a place to live.到达纽约两天后,我找到了住的地方。

文化背景知识

百老汇(Broadway)

百老汇,原意为“宽阔的街”,是纽约市重要的南北向街道,南起巴特里公园(Battery Park),由南向北纵贯曼哈顿岛。百老汇两旁分布着为数众多的剧院,是美国戏剧和音乐剧的重要发源地。

Section B

…once they find people in need, they decide on suitable ways to offer them help. ……他们一旦发现有人身处困境,就选定适当的方式来帮助他们。

(1)once 在本句中是连词,引导时间状语从句,意为“一旦……就……”。

(2)in need 意为“在困难时;在贫困之中”。如:

We are collecting money for children in need. 我们正在为贫困儿童募捐。

Section C

1. While most people around the world value their homes, there are many people in every country who are homeless. 尽管世界上大多数人都珍视他们的家,但是每个国家却总有很多无家可归的人。

此句中 who are homeless 是定语从句,修饰 people。

2. We must think of the homeless as people, not just as problems. 我们必须关心无家可归的人,而不是仅仅把无家可归视为(社会)问题。

think of...as... 意为"把……视为……;把……看成是……"。如:

I think of this place as my home. 我把这个地方当成了家。

Section D

By 2012, Project Hope had raised 8.73 billion *yuan*. 到 2012 年,希望工程筹集的资金已有 87.3 亿元。

此句用的是过去完成时。过去完成时由"had+动词的过去分词"构成,表示在过去某个动作或某个具体时间之前已经发生、完成的动作或情况。

文化背景知识

世界卫生组织

(World Health Organization)

世界卫生组织(英文缩写 WHO)是联合国属下的专门机构,国际最大的公共卫生组织,总部设于瑞士日内瓦。世界卫生组织的宗旨是使全世界人民获得尽可能高水平的健康。该组织给健康下的定义为"身体、精神及社会生活中的完美状态"。其主要职能包括:促进流行病和地方病的防治;提供和改进公共卫生,疾病医疗和有关事项的教学与训练;推动确定生物制品的国际标准。

中国儿童少年基金会

(China Children and Teenagers' Fund)

中国儿童少年基金会是经中共中央书记处第 100 次会议通过,于 1981 年 7 月 28 日正式成立的中国第一家基金会。作为中国公益基金会的先驱,中国儿童少年基金会自成立以来,恪守为儿童少年教育福利事业竭诚服务的宗旨,紧紧围绕儿童的真实需求,不断创新募捐救助理念、探索公益项目运作长效机制,充分发挥公益组织在社会保障体系中的重要补充作用。该基金会以女童为救助对象的"春蕾计划"和以儿童安全健康为资助重点的"安康计划"为探索慈善事业运作模式,丰富慈善事业的发展理论,推进我国慈善事业的蓬勃发展起到了非常重要的作用。

红十字国际委员会

(International Committee of the Red Cross)

红十字国际委员会是总部设于瑞士日内瓦的人道主义机构。根据日内瓦公约的有关规定,红十字国际委员会以中立团体身份对战争受难者进行保护和救济,并为上述原因而失散的人查人转信;受理有关违反人道主义公约的申诉;致力于发展和传播人道主义法律,与各国红十字会、红新月会、武装部队和医疗部门合作培训医务人员。历次的日内瓦公约和附加议定书,都是由红十字国际委员会起草的,它对改进、发展、完善和传播日内瓦公约等起到了重要作用;世界上新成立红十字会或经过改组的红十字会须经红十字国际委员会正式承认,方能加入国际红十字组织。迄今为止,连同 1901 年红十字会的创始者亨利·杜南荣获的第一个诺贝尔和平奖,红十字国际委员会已四次获得诺贝尔和平奖。

中国青年志愿者协会

(Chinese Young Volunteers Association)

中国青年志愿者协会成立于 1994 年 12 月 5 日,是中国共产主义青年团团中央指导下的,由志愿从事社会公益事业与社会保障事业的各界青年组成的全国性社会团体。协会旨在通过组织和指导全国青年志愿服务活动,为社会提供志愿服务,推动社会主义精神文明建设,促进社会主义市场经济体制的建立和完善,提高青年的整体素质,为经济社会的协调发展和全面进步作出贡献。

Unit 2 Saving the Earth

Topic 1 Pollution has caused too many problems.

Section B

—How long have you been like this? 你像这样多久了?

—I've been like this since last week. 自上周以来我一直都是这样。

how long 意为"多久,多长时间",用来询问或谈论某段时间,答语通常用 for,since 等引导的时间状语,谓语动词必须为延续性动词。如:

— How long have you learned English? 你学英语多长时间了?

— I have learned English for three years. 我学英语三年了。

文化背景知识

光污染(Light Pollution)

光污染一般分为白亮污染、人工白昼和彩光污染。它主要包括城市建筑的玻璃幕墙、磨光大理石等反射的强烈日光;汽车夜间行驶时的照明灯和某些工作场所内过多,过分复杂的信号灯;夜幕下的广告灯、霓虹灯,以及舞厅、夜总会里的黑光灯、荧光灯等。光污染会导致眼睛灼伤、神经紊乱、身体组织癌变等。光污染不仅有损人的生理机能,而且影响人的心理健康。光污染还会伤害鸟类和昆虫,强光可能破坏昆虫在夜间的正常繁殖过程。

Section C

1. However, not all people know noise is also a kind of pollution and is harmful to humans' health. 然而,并非所有的人都知道噪音也是一种污染,而且也会对人类健康造成危害。

not all... 表示部分否定,意为"不是所有的都……"。not 与 both, all, every 以及 every 的派生词连用时表示部分否定。如:

Not everybody likes watching TV. 并非人人都爱看电视。

neither, none, nothing, nobody, no one 等表示全部否定。如:

Neither of the students likes reading. 这两个学生都不喜欢读书。

I think nothing is difficult for me. 我认为对我来说一切都不难。

2. Recently, it was reported that many teenagers in America can hear no better than 65-year-old people do, because these young people always listen to loud pop music. 据报道,近来许多美国青少年的听力几乎和 65 岁老人的听力一样差,这是因为这些年轻人总听劲爆的流行音乐。

no better than 意为"同……(几乎)一样;和……(几乎)一样坏"。如:

The path is no better than a sheep track. 那条路简直就是一条羊肠小道。

3. What has been done to solve these problems? 为解决这些问题采取了什么措施?

has been done 是现在完成时的被动语态形式。

Section D

1. In the fields, farmers use too many chemicals which destroy the soil. 在地里,农民使用了太多对土壤起破坏作用的化肥和农药。

chemical 作名词时,意为"化学品",在此指"化肥和农药"。

which destroy the soil 是定语从句,修饰 chemicals。

2. Let's be greener people. 让我们成为更环保的人吧。

green 意为"绿色的;草绿色的"。在此句中的意思是"环保的;赞成环保的"。

Topic 2 All these problems are very serious.

Section A

And a lot of water can be saved by forests. 森林可以贮存大量的水分。

(1) save 意为"贮存,保留,保存"。如:

We'll eat some now and save some for tomorrow. 我们现在吃一些并给明天留一些。

(2) can be saved 是含有情态动词的被动语态。

文化背景知识

绿色长城(the Green Great Wall)

绿色长城即三北防护林工程,始建于 1978 年,是中国政府为改善生态环境建设的大型人工林业生态工程。该工程跨东北西部、华北北部和西北大部分地区,包括我国北方 13 个省(自治区、直辖市),东西长 4 480 千米,南北宽 560 至 1 460 千米,总面积4 069 000平方千米。在国际上被誉为"中国的绿色长城"。

沙暴(Sandstorm)

沙暴(sandstorm)指大风把大量沙粒吹入近地层所形成的挟沙风暴;尘暴(duststorm)则是大风把大量尘埃及其他细粒物质卷入高空所形成的风暴。沙尘暴(sand duststorm)是沙暴和尘暴两者兼有的总称,是指强风把地面大量沙尘物质吹起并卷入空中,使空气特别浑浊,水平能见度小于一千米的严重风沙天气现象。

Section B

1. Everyone should care for wild animals and plant more trees. 每个人都应该关爱野生动物,并且多种树。

everyone 是不定代词,意为"每个人,人人,大家",后不能接 of 短语。

every one 中的 every 是形容词,修饰 one,作定语,意为"每个",后面常接 of 短语,表示范围,意为"其中之一"。如:

Everyone loves him. 人人都喜欢他。

Every one of you must go to school. 你们每个人都必须上学。

2. We should do everything we can to protect the environment.我们应该尽一切努力保护环境。

(1) everything 是不定代词,意为"每件事物,一切",不特指哪一个事物。everything 作主语时,谓语用单数。如:

Everything goes well. 一切安好。/ 一切顺利。

(2)修饰 everything 的定语从句 we can 后省略了谓语动词 do。

3. … who breaks the rules will be punished.破坏规则的……将会受到惩罚。

will be punished 是一般将来时的被动语态形式。

Section C

Some things we have done are very good for the earth while others are bad. 我们做的一些事情对地球有益,而另一些是有害的。

while 表示对比,意思是"然而"。如:

He likes sports while I like collecting stamps. 他喜欢运动而我则爱好集邮。

文化背景知识

臭氧层(Ozone Layer)

臭氧层是平流层中臭氧浓度相对较高的部分,距地面约 20-25 千米。太阳射向地球的紫外线大部分被臭氧层吸收,因此臭氧层是地球不可缺少的保护层。但是,由于人们大量使用的氟利昂制剂散逸到大气层中,破坏了臭氧层。目前,南极地区臭氧层已经出现了一个大洞。

温室效应(the Greenhouse Effect)

温室效应,又称"花房效应",是大气保温效应的俗称。大气能使太阳短波辐射到达地面,但地表向外放出的长波热辐射线却被大气吸收,这样就使地表与低层大气温度增高,因其作用类似于栽培农作物的温室,故名温室效应。温室效应主要是由于现代化工业社会过多燃烧煤炭、石油和天然气,这些燃料燃烧后放出大量的二氧化碳气体进入大气造成的。自工业革命以来,人类向大气中排入的二氧化碳等吸热性强的温室气体逐年增加,大气的温室效应也随之增强,并导致产生全球气候变暖等一系列严重问题,引起了世界各国的关注。

Topic 3 What can we do at home to protect the environment?

Section A

Well, my main job is to help spread the message about protecting the environment. For example, the three R's — reduce, reuse and recycle — are important. 嗯,我的主要工作是帮助宣传一些环保方面的知识。例如,"三 R"——减少使用、再次使用和回收再利用——是十分重要的。

Section C

Electric vehicles were developed in the 1990s. On April 11, 2010, a new kind of electric vehicle named "Yezi"was shown in 2010 Shanghai World Expo. 电动车是在 20 世纪 90 年代研制出来的。2010 年 4 月 11 日,一种新型的电动车"叶子"在上海世博会上展出。

were developed 和 was shown 都是一般过去时的被动语态形式。

文化背景知识

酸雨(Acid Rain)

酸雨正式的名称是酸性沉降,它可分为"湿沉降"与"干沉降"两大类,前者指的是所有气状污染物或粒状污染物随着雨、雪、雾或雹等降水型态而落到地面,后者则是指在不下雨的日子,从空中降下来的落尘所带来的酸性物质。它损害健康、污染水域、影响树木的生长、破坏土壤、危害农作物并且破坏城市建筑。

沼气(Biogas)

沼气是人畜粪便、秸秆、污水等各种有机物质在密闭的沼气池内,在厌氧(即没有氧气)条件下发酵,产生的一种可燃烧气体。由于这种气体最先是在沼泽中发现的,所以被称为沼气。

叶子(Yezi)

"叶子"是在中国 2010 年上海世博会展示的一款概念车,以电能为主要动力来源。车顶的大叶子是一部奇妙的光电转化器,它通过模拟自然界中叶片的光合作用,把太阳能转化为电能。而叶子的四个车轮就是四个风力发电机,通过捕捉散逸的风能,将风能转变成电能。叶子更能将排放的高浓度二氧化碳通过激光发生器转化为电能为车内照明,或转化为车内空调制冷剂,从而实现汽车负排放,起到了改善自然环境,缓解温室效应的效果。叶子通过转换利用每一份自然能源,将自己融入自然循环中,表达了一种车与自然合为一体的美好理念。

磁悬浮列车(Maglev Train)

磁悬浮列车是当今世界上最快的地面客运交通工具,它利用磁极的排斥力和吸引力将列车悬浮于空中并进行导向,实现列车与地面轨道间的无机械接触,再利用线性电机驱动列车运行。磁悬浮列车的最高速度可以达每小时 500 千米以上,比轮轨高速列车的 300 多千米还要快。在时速 200 千米时,乘客几乎听不到声响。

Unit 3 English Around the World

Topic 1 English is widely spoken throughout the world.

Section A

You can stick it on the wall. 你可以把它贴在墙上。

stick 作名词时,意为"枝条;棍"。而在此句中作动词,意为"粘贴,粘住"。如:

He stuck a map of the world on the wall. 他把一张世界地图贴到墙上。

Section B

1. I don't think I will have any long conversations in Spanish. 我想我不会用西班牙语进行长谈的。

如果主句谓语动词是 think, consider, suppose, believe, expect, guess, imagine, feel, seem 等，其后的宾语从句若含有否定意义，一般要把否定词移到主句谓语中，从句谓语用肯定式。如：

I don't believe he treated the child like that. 我相信他不会那样对待那孩子的。

2. Will the interpreter explain to you the culture of the country? 翻译会给你解释这个国家的文化吗？

explain to... 意为"向……解释/说明"。如：

He explained the system to me. 他向我介绍了这个系统。

文化背景知识

官方语言(Official Language)

官方语言是一个国家通用的正式语言或认定的正式语言。它是为适应管理国家事务的需要，在国家机关、正式文件、法律裁决及国际交往等官方场合中规定一种或几种语言为有效语言的现象。官方语言也是一个国家公民与其政府机关通讯时使用的语言。

Section D

... and the study of English is regarded as a very important industry in China as well as in the rest of the world. ……无论在中国还是在世界上其他国家，英语学习都被当作一个非常重要的行业。

regard...as... 意为"将……视为……；把……看作……"。如：

Don't regard him as a fool. 别把他当作傻瓜。

Topic 2 Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures.

Section C

1. a homeless dog 丧家犬
   a mad dog 疯狗
   a running dog 走狗
   a dog catching a mouse 狗拿耗子多管闲事

2. The ancient emperors compared themselves to dragons. 古代的皇帝把他们自己比作龙。

compare...to... 意为"把……比作……"。如：

He compared the girl to the moon in the poem. 他在诗中把那姑娘比作月亮。

compare...with... 意为"把……和……作比较"。如：

If you compare her work with his, you'll find hers is much better. 如果把他俩的工作比较一下，你就会发现她的好很多。

Section D

1. tofu 读作/ˈtəʊfuː/意为"豆腐"，根据汉语拼音转变而成，在英语中有些词就是这样得来的。如："磕头"在英语中为 kowtow /ˌkaʊˈtaʊ/。

2. In America an elevator starts on the first floor, but in Britain it starts on the ground floor. 在美国，电梯从"first floor(一楼)"开始。在英国，电梯从"ground floor(一楼)"开始。

美式英语中，first floor 指一楼，second floor 指二楼。

英式英语中，ground floor 指一楼，first floor 指二楼。

Topic 3 Could you give us some advice on how to learn English well?

Section A

1. Could you make yourself understood in the USA? 在美国，别人能听懂你说的话吗？

短语 make oneself done 的基本意思是"使自己被……"。如：make oneself understood 指使自己被(别人)理解，即把自己的意思说清楚；make oneself heard 指使自己被听到，即使别人听见自己说

的话。

Can you make yourself understood at the English Corner? 在英语角别人能听懂你的话吗?

2. …but I dare not speak English in public. …… 但我不敢当众讲英语。

dare 在这里是情态动词,意为“敢于”,与 need 的用法一样,既可用作情态动词,亦可用作实义动词。用作情态动词时,它只有一种形式,后跟动词原形,主要用于否定句和疑问句。用作实义动词时,它有动词的全部形式,可用于一切句式。如:

She doesn't dare to say anything. 她什么都不敢说。(实义动词)

How dare you speak to me like that! 你怎么敢那样对我说话!(情态动词)

3. At times I feel like giving up. 有时我想要放弃。

feel like (doing) sth.意为“想要(做)某事”。如:

He didn't feel like going to work.他不想去上班。

Do you feel like another drink? 你想再喝一杯吗?

Section B

1. … I was also weak in English. ……我的英语也不好。

be weak in 意为“不善于,不擅长”,相当于 be poor in。其反义词组为 do well in/be good at。如:

I'm weak in the science subjects. = I'm not good at the science subjects. 我的理科不好。

2. Think about your answer, take a deep breath and smile… 思考你的答案,深呼吸并且面带微笑……

take a deep breath 意为“深呼吸”。如:

Take a deep breath, and then you will feel relaxed. 深呼吸,那样你会觉得轻松。

Section C

1. It's an honor to talk with all of you here. 能与在座的各位交谈是我的荣幸。

It's an honor to do… 意为“做……感到很荣幸”。如:

It is a great honor to be invited here today. 今天承蒙邀请到此,深感荣幸。

2. I'm sure that you will make great progress as long as you stick to them.我相信只要你们坚持下去就会取得很大进步。

(1) as long as 意为“只要”,引导条件状语从句。如:

We'll go as long as the weather is fine. 只要天气好我们就去。

(2) stick to 意为“坚持”,后接名词、代词或动名词。如:

He promised to help us and he stuck to his word. 他答应过帮助我们,他没有失信。

She has stuck to reading aloud in the morning all these years. 这些年她一直坚持晨读。

Section D

Then have paper and a pen ready as you may want to write down useful words or phrases. 接下来,把纸和笔准备好,因为你也许想把有用的单词或短语记下来。

as 在此处作连词,意为“因为”。

Unit 4 Amazing Science

Topic 1 When was it invented?

Section A

1. It's made of metal. 它是用金属做的。

be made of… 意为“用……制造的(从成品中仍可看得出原材料)”。

be made from… 意为“用……制造的(从成品中看不出原材料)”。

be made by… 意为“由(被)……制作”,后接表示人的名词或代词。

be made in… 意为“在……制造”,后接表示地点或时间的名词。
be made into… 意为“(某物)被制成……”。如:
The desk is made of wood. 这张桌子是用木头做的。
The paper is made from wood. 纸是用木头做的。
Was this cake made by your mother? 这蛋糕是你妈妈做的吗?
This cellphone is made in America. 这部手机是美国制造的。
Metal can be made into all kinds of things. 金属可以制成各种各样的物品。
2. It's used for sending satellites or spaceships into space. 它用来向太空发射卫星或宇宙飞船。
be used for… 意为“(被)用来……”(强调用途或作用)。
be used to do… 意为“(被)用来做……”(强调目的)。
be used as… 意为“(被)用作……”(强调被当做工具或手段来用)。
be used by… 意为“被……使用”,by 后接人或物(强调使用者)。如:
Stamps are used for sending letters. 邮票是用来寄信的。
The same words were used to describe his feelings. 同样的语言被用来描述他的感情。
“Swim” can be used as a noun.单词 swim 可作为名词使用。
Recorders are often used by English teachers. 英语老师经常使用录音机。
3. I wish I could go into space some day. 我梦想有一天可以遨游太空。
这个句子表达了康康的主观愿望和对未来的梦想,由于此愿望不一定能够实现,所以从句用了情态动词 can 的过去式 could,这是虚拟语气的一种用法。

Section B

It's said that he invented more than two thousand things during his life. 据说他(托马斯·爱迪生)一生中发明了两千多种东西。
It's said that…意为“据说……”。如:
It's said that she lived to be over 100. 据说她活了 100 多岁。

Section C

1. Inventions come about in many ways. 发明有多种产生方式。
come about 意为“发生,产生”。如:
Can you tell me how the accident came about?
你能告诉我事故是怎样发生的吗?
2. This is the time to brainstorm for ideas and to evaluate them. 这时你应该多想主意,并对它们进行评估。
brainstorm 意为“集思广益;集体献计”。如:
Brainstorm as many ideas as possible. 大家尽量动脑筋想办法。

Section D

文化背景知识

GPS,即全球定位系统(Global Positioning System),它是一个中距离圆形轨道卫星定位系统,可以为地球表面绝大部分地区提供准确的定位和高精度的时间基准。该系统是通过太空中的 24 颗 GPS 卫星来完成的。最少需要其中 3 颗卫星,就能迅速确定你在地球上的位置。所能接收到的卫星数越多,译码出来的位置就越精确。

Topic 2 I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

Section C

1. …and is named after Mars, the Roman god of war. ……它是以罗马战神玛尔斯的名字命名的。
name…after… 意为“以……命名”。如:

He was named after his father. 他以其父亲的名字命名。

2. Its diameter is 53% as wide as that of the earth. 它的直径是地球直径的53%。

倍数的表示法:倍数+as+形容词或副词原级+as。如:

This box is four times as heavy as that one. 这个盒子是那个盒子的4倍重。

3. Mars goes around the sun at a distance of about 228 million kilometers. 火星在距太阳大约228 000 000千米处环绕着太阳转。

at a distance of… 意为"相隔……"。

at/from a distance 意为"在远处"。如:

The police followed him at a distance. 警察远远地跟着他。

4. It takes a spaceship about eight months to reach Mars from the earth when the two planets are closest to each other. 当两个星球(地球和火星)距离最近时,宇宙飞船从地球驶到火星要花费大约八个月的时间。

closest 是 close 的最高级形式,当形容词的最高级作表语时,定冠词 the 可以省略。

5. It has been two days since we landed on Mars. 我们登上火星已经两天了。

it 用作主语谈论时间,与 since 连用的常见结构有两种形式:

(1)It has been+一段时间+since+从句

(2)It is+一段时间+since+从句 如:

It has been a long time since they left. = It is a long time since they left. 他们已经离开很久了。

How long has it been since we last time went to the theater? 我们多久没去看戏了?

Section D

Some spaceships have gone beyond the solar system. 一些飞船已到了太阳系以外的地方。

beyond 意为"在(向)……较远的一边;超出,除……之外;晚于,迟于"。如:

Our success was far beyond what we thought. 我们的成功远远超出我们的预想。

文化背景知识

太阳系的八大行星

(Eight planets of the Solar System)

太阳系八大行星分别是:水星、金星、地球、火星、木星、土星、天王星和海王星。太阳系最大的行星是木星,最小的是水星。行星由太阳往外的顺序是:水星(Mercury)、金星(Venus)、地球(Earth)、火星(Mars)、木星(Jupiter)、土星(Saturn)、天王星(Uranus)、海王星(Neptune)。这些行星都以太阳为中心沿椭圆轨道公转。

Topic 3 China is the third nation that sent a person into space.

Section A

It proves that China has made great progress in its space industry. 那证明中国已在航天事业上取得了巨大进步。

prove 意为"证明;证实"。常用于以下两种形式:

(1)prove+(that)从句意为"证明……"。如:

This proves that I was right. 这证明我是对的。

(2)prove … to … 意为"向……证明……;给……证实……"。如:

Just give me a chance and I'll prove it to you. 只要给我个机会,我就会证明给你看。

文化背景知识

神舟五号(*Shenzhou V*)

2003年10月15日9时0分,"神舟"五号载人飞船发射成功,将中国第一名航天英雄杨利伟送上太空,中国成为世界上第三个能够独立开展载人航天活动的国家。飞船环绕地球14圈后返回地面。继"神舟"五号之后,我国在2005年,2008年,2012年和2013年分别成功发射了"神舟"六号,"神舟"七号,"神舟"九号和"神舟"十号载人飞船,标志着我国航天事业再上新台阶。

嫦娥一号(*Chang'e Ⅰ*)

2007 年 10 月 24 日 18 时 5 分,“嫦娥”一号卫星被成功送入太空。它是由我国自主研制的第一颗月球探测卫星,它的成功发射,标志着中国成为世界上第五个发射月球探测器的国家。

东方红一号(*Dongfanghong Ⅰ*)

“东方红一号”卫星是我国的第一颗人造卫星,由以钱学森为首任院长的中国空间技术研究院研制,于 1970 年 4 月 24 日在酒泉卫星发射中心发射升空。“东方红一号”卫星的发射标志着我国成为世界上继前苏联、美国、法国和日本之后第五个能独立发射人造卫星的国家。

尼尔·奥尔登·阿姆斯特朗

(*Neil Alden Armstrong*)

尼尔·奥尔登·阿姆斯特朗(1930 年—2012 年),美国著名宇航员。1969 年 7 月 16 日,同奥尔德林和柯林斯(由他担任指令长)乘“阿波罗 11 号”宇宙飞船,飞向月球。7 月 20 日,阿姆斯特朗“飞鹰”号登月舱在月球表面着陆。阿姆斯特朗率先踏上月球表面,成为第一个在月球上行走的人。当时他说出了无数场合常被引用的一句名言:“这是个人迈出的一小步,但却是人类迈出的一大步。”

Section C

1. There is no doubt that computers are very useful in technology and business. 毫无疑问,电脑在技术和商业领域中很有使用价值。

There is no doubt that… 意为“无疑,毫无疑问……”。如:

There is no doubt at all that we did the right thing. 毫无疑问,我们做得对。

2. Besides, not everything we read on the Internet is true or good for us. 此外,我们在因特网上所读到的一切对我们来说并非都是真实或有益的。

besides 作副词,意为“而且,还有”。如:

I don't really want to go. Besides, it's too late now. 我真的不想去。而且现在太晚了。

besides 还可作介词,意为“除……之外”,表示都在范围之内。如:

Besides English, we study many other subjects. 除了英语,我们还学许多其他课程。(也学英语)

except 意为“除……之外”,强调所排除的不在范围之内。如:

They all went there except Li Ming. 除了李明之外,他们都去那儿了。(李明没去)

Section D

No one knows for certain, but most people think that robots will be part of our lives. 没人确切地知道(未来会是什么样),但是大多数人认为机器人将会成为我们生活的一部分。

know/say for certain 意为“确切地知道/肯定地说”。如:

I know for certain that he's there, but he doesn't answer me. 虽然我知道他肯定就在那儿,但他就是不回应。

Grammar 语法

Ⅰ. 数词(Numerals)

1. 英语中百位数与十位数之间要用 and 连接(美国英语中 and 可省略),在千位数中,如果百位数为零,要在千位数的后面加 and,千位数与百位数之间不用任何词或符号连接。如:

129　one hundred and twenty-nine　　1 015　one thousand and fifteen

103　one hundred and three　　2 468　two thousand, four hundred and sixty-eight

2. 英语中表示数词"万"要在 thousand 前加上十位数或百位数,"万"为 ten thousand,"十万"为 one/a hundred thousand。如:

11 321　eleven thousand, three hundred and twenty-one

123 456　one hundred and twenty-three thousand, four hundred and fifty-six

2 432 529　two million, four hundred and thirty-two thousand, five hundred and twenty-nine

Ⅱ. 不定代词(Indefinite Pronouns)

不明确指代某(些)事物或某(些)人的代词叫做不定代词。

	可　　数	不　可　数
许　多	many	much
一　些	some, any	
	a few	a little
几乎没有	few	little

	每　个	任何一个	全　都	都　不	另一个
指两者	each	either	both	neither	(the) other
两者以上	each/every	any	all	none/no	another

	some-	any-	no-	every-
人	someone	anyone	no one/none	everyone
	somebody	anybody	nobody	everybody
物	something	anything	nothing	everything

1. some-/any-复合代词的用法与 some/any 的用法基本一致。肯定句以及期待肯定回答的疑问句中通常用前者;否定句和疑问句通常用后者。如:

I saw ***someone*** in the room. 我看见房间里有人。

Would you like ***something*** to drink? 你要点儿喝的东西吗?

She didn't say ***anything***. 她什么也没说。

2. 不定代词在句中可以作主语、表语和宾语。如:

Everyone in our class likes sports. 我们班的每个人都喜欢运动。(作主语)

I know ***nothing*** about this. 我对此事一无所知。(作宾语)

Money isn't ***everything***. 金钱不是一切。(作表语)

3. 不定代词作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。如:

Somebody has turned off the light. 有人把灯关了。

Everything goes well. 一切进展顺利。

4. 形容词修饰不定代词时应该放在不定代词之后。如:

He did ***everything possible*** to make her happy. 他做了他所能做的一切事情逗她开心。

I have ***something important*** to tell you. 我有重要的事要告诉你。

Ⅲ. 构词法(Word Formation)

语言按一定的规律和习惯创造新词。英语的构词方法主要有四种:合成、派生、转化和缩略。

合成是指由两个或两个以上的词构成一个新词;派生是指一个词通过加前缀或后缀构成一个新词;转化是指由一类词转化为另一类或几类词;缩略是指一个词通过缩略方法构成一个新词。通过前三种方法构成的新词词义有变化,而第四种方法不改变原词义。

1. 合成法(Compounding)

(1) 合成名词,如:classroom(教室), spaceship(宇宙飞船), blackboard(黑板), firewood(木柴),toothbrush(牙刷)

(2) 合成形容词,如:overtime(超时的), good-looking(好看的), handmade(手工制作的), hard-working(勤劳的), kind-hearted(好心的)

(3) 合成代词,如:herself(她自己), ourselves(我们自己), somebody/someone (某人), nothing (没有东西), anything(任何东西)

(4) 合成动词,如:sleepwalk(梦游), whitewash(粉刷), underline(在……下画线), overcome(克服)

(5) 合成副词,如:everywhere(到处), somewhere(某处), downstairs(在楼下)

2. 派生法(Derivation)

(1) 前缀(Prefix)

前 缀	含　　义	例　　词
dis-	表示“不”	dislike(不喜欢), disappear(消失), disagreement(不同意), disappointed(失望的), discover(发现)
im-	表示“不”	impossible(不可能的), impolite(不礼貌的)
in-	表示“不”	incorrect(不正确的), indirect(间接的), incomplete(不完整的)
inter-	表示“互相”, “在……之间”	international(国际的), Internet(因特网), interview(采访)
mini-	表示“小”	minibus(小型公共汽车,中巴), miniskirt(超短裙)
mis-	表示“错误”	mistake(错误), misunderstand(误解)
non-	表示“不”	non-fiction(非小说类文学作品), non-cooperation(不合作)
pre-	表示“在……之前”	pre-school(学前), pre-reading(读前的), preview(预习)
re-	表示“重复”	retell(复述), rewrite(重写), return(返回), review(复习)
sub-	表示“在……下面”	subway(地铁)
super-	表示“超”	supermarket(超市), superman(超人), superstar(超级明星)
tele-	表示“远”	telephone(电话), telescope(望远镜)
un-	表示“不”,“非”	unhappy(不幸福的), unfair(不公平的), unlike(不像), uncertain(不确信的), unknown(未知的), unusual(不同寻常的)

(2) 后缀(Suffix)

后缀通常使词由一种词类转为另一种词类。常见的后缀有:

①构成名词常用的后缀

-an: American(美国人), Italian(意大利人)

-er：worker(工人)，driver(司机)，teacher(教师)，player(选手)，painter(绘画者)
-ess：actress(女演员)，waitress(女服务员)
-or：actor(演员)，visitor(参观者)，sailor(海员)
-ian：musician(音乐家)
-ist：artist(艺术家)，scientist(科学家)
-ance：appearance(出现)，performance(表演)
-ing：reading(阅读)，swimming(游泳)，hearing(听力)
-ment：agreement(同意)，basement(地下室)，announcement(通知)，entertainment(娱乐)
-ness：illness(疾病)，homelessness(无家可归)，kindness(慈祥)，happiness(幸福)
-sion：decision(决定)，discussion(讨论)，conclusion(结论)
-tion：education(教育)，organization(组织)，invention(发明)
-th：truth(事实)
②构成形容词常用的后缀
-al：national(民族的)，environmental(环境的)，personal(个人的)，educational(有教育意义的)
-able：countable(可数的)，changeable(易变的)，reusable(可循环利用的)
-ed：surprised(惊奇的)，fried(油煎的)
-en：woolen(羊毛的)，wooden(木料的)，golden(金黄色的)
-ful：useful(有用的)，beautiful(美丽的)，successful(成功的)，harmful(有害的)
-ing：interesting(有趣的)，exciting(令人兴奋的)
-ic/-cal：heroic(英雄的)，historic (有历史意义的)，historical (历史上的)
-ive：creative(创造性的)
-less：homeless(无家可归的)，useless(无用的)
-ly：friendly(友好的)，lovely(可爱的)
-ous：dangerous(危险的)
-y：cloudy(阴天的)，windy(有风的)
③构成动词常用的后缀
-en：deepen(加深)
-ize：apologize(道歉)，modernize(使现代化)
④构成副词常用的后缀
-ly：carefully(小心地)，quickly(迅速地)，orally(口头地)
3. 转化法(Conversion)
(1) 名词转化为动词：water(水→浇水)，hand(手→传递)，color(颜色→染色)
(2) 形容词转化为名词：daily (日常的→日报)，high(高的→最高水平)
(3) 动词转化为名词：look(看，瞧)，talk(谈话)，swim(游泳)
(4) 形容词转化为动词：clean(清洁的→清扫)，slow(慢的→放慢)
(5) 副词转化为动词：down(向下→打倒，放下)
注：一个词也可以不经过任何变化由一种词类转化为另外几种词类。如 like 既可以作动词，又可以作名词、介词、连词、形容词和副词。
4. 缩略法(Acronym Formation)
TV = television(电视)，ad = advertisement(广告)，WWW = World Wide Web(万维网)
DIY = do it yourself(自己动手)，WTO = World Trade Organization(世贸组织)
HK = Hong Kong(香港)，BBC = British Broadcasting Corporation(英国广播公司)

Ⅳ. 现在完成时(Present Perfect)

1. 现在完成时的构成

现在完成时由“助动词 have/has +动词的过去分词”构成。现以动词 work 为例,将现在完成时的肯定式、否定式和疑问式及其简略答语列表如下:

肯 定 式	否 定 式	
I/You ***have worked***. He/She/It ***has worked***. We/You/They ***have worked***.	I/You ***have not worked***. He/She/It ***has not worked***. We/You/They ***have not worked***.	
疑问式和简略答语		
Have I/you ***worked***? ***Has*** he/she/it ***worked***? ***Have*** we/you/they ***worked***?	Yes, you/I ***have***. Yes, he/she/it ***has***. Yes, you/we/they ***have***.	No, you/I ***haven't***. No, he/she/it ***hasn't***. No, you/we/they ***haven't***.

注:规则动词的过去分词的构成与过去式相同;不规则动词的过去分词见本书《不规则动词表》。

2. 现在完成时的用法

用 法	例 句
表示过去发生或已经完成的某一动作对现在造成的影响或结果。	—***Have*** you ***found*** him yet? —No, he ***has*** probably ***gone*** home.(现在不在这里)
表示开始于过去并持续到现在的动作或状态,可以和表示从过去某一时刻延续到现在(包括“现在”在内)的一段时间的状语连用。表示持续动作或状态的动词多是延续性动词。	I ***haven't seen*** her these days. He ***has taught*** us ***since*** I came to this school. How long ***have*** you ***been*** like this? I ***have been*** like this ***since*** last month. She ***has lived*** here ***for*** three years.
现在完成时可以和 just, already, yet, ever, never, before 等词连用。	I've ***just*** called you. She has ***already*** finished it. Has Kangkang come back ***yet***? Have you ***ever*** cooked at home? I have ***never*** seen such a beautiful place ***before.***
have/has been to 和 have/has gone to 的区别: have/has been to 表示“曾经到过某地”。 have/has gone to 表示“已经去某地了”。	—Where ***have*** you ***been***? —I ***have been to*** Beijing.(去过北京,已经回来) —Where ***is*** Jane? —She ***has gone to*** Beijing.(去北京了,不在此处)

3. 短暂性动词的完成时态不能和表示一段时间的时间状语连用,当它需要与表示一段时间的时间状语连用时,通常要进行词语转化, 其转化形式为:

buy — have	come — be	get to know — know
begin — be on	catch a cold — have a cold	marry — be married
borrow — keep	die — be dead	leave — be away(from)
close — be closed	fall ill — be ill	join — be a member of/be in

The film has been on for half an hour.(正) The film has begun for half an hour.(误)

The bookstore has been closed since last month.(正) The bookstore has closed since last month.(误)

注:短暂性动词的完成时态在否定句中可以和表示一段时间的状语连用。如:

I haven't seen him for a long time. 我已经好久没有看到他了。

4. 现在完成时和一般过去时的区别

现在完成时表示过去发生或已经完成的动作对现在造成的影响或结果,强调的是现在的情况,所以它不能直接和表示过去某一时间的时间状语连用,如:yesterday, last night, three weeks ago, in 2007 等。而一般过去时只表示过去的动作或状态,和现在不发生联系,强调的是过去的情况,它可以和表示过去某一时间的时间状语连用。如:

I have been to Beijing. 我去过北京。(我对北京有所了解)

I went to Beijing ***last year***. 我去年去过北京。(只说我去年去过北京,不涉及现在的情况)

She has lived here ***since 2000***. 2000 年以来她一直住在这里。(她现在还住在这里)

She lived here ***in 2000***. 2000 年她住在这里。(不涉及现在她是否还住在这里)

Ⅴ. 被动语态(The Passive Voice)

英语动词有两种语态,即主动语态(The Active Voice)和被动语态(The Passive Voice)。主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者,被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者。如:

Granny takes care of the girl. 奶奶照顾小女孩。

(Granny 是动作 take care of 的执行者,属主动语态)

The girl is taken care of by Granny. 小女孩由奶奶来照顾。

(the girl 是动作 take care of 的承受者,属被动语态)

1. 被动语态的构成

被动语态由"be+及物动词的过去分词"构成。be 有人称、数和时态的变化,其肯定式、否定式、疑问式的变化规则与 be 作为系动词时完全一样。如:

English ***is*** widely ***used*** around the world. 英语在世界上被广泛使用。

English ***is not*** widely ***used*** around the world. 英语在世界上不被广泛使用。

Is English widely ***used*** around the world? 英语在世界上被广泛使用吗?

Yes, it ***is***. / No, it ***isn't.*** 是的。/ 不,不被广泛使用。

Why ***is*** English ***used*** widely? 为什么英语被广泛使用?

The bulb ***was invented*** in 1879. 灯泡是 1879 年发明的。

Where **were** laptops **invented**? 笔记本电脑在哪发明的?

I don't think aliens **will be found** in space.我认为在太空中不会发现外星人。

When **will** the movie **be shown**? 电影何时上映?

2. 被动语态的用法

当我们只需强调动作的承受者,或者不知道谁是动作的执行者,或者没有必要指出谁是动作的执行者时,要用被动语态。动作的执行者一般由 by 引出或省略。如:

Spanish ***is spoken*** as the official language there. 在那儿,西班牙语是官方语言。

It ***was created by*** American scientists in 1997. 它于 1997 年由美国科学家创建。

The problem ***has been solved.***(现在完成时) 这个问题已经得到了解决。

I was bought a cellphone by my father last week.=***A cellphone was bought for me*** by my father last week. 上周我父亲给我买了一部手机。

注:(1)不及物动词不能直接用于被动语态。如:

The girl ***will be*** well ***cared for.*** 这个女孩将被很好地照顾。

(2) 主动句中的宾语补足语如果是不带 to 的不定式,如 make/see/feel/hear/notice sb. do sth. 等,在变被动句时,要加上 to。如:

They heard a girl sing in the next room. 他们听到隔壁房间有个女孩在唱歌。

→A girl ***was heard to*** sing in the next room(by them).

Ⅵ. 并列句(Compound Sentences)

并列句是由并列连词把两个或两个以上的简单句连在一起构成的句子,连词前可用逗号,也可不用逗号。

1. 表示并列关系,常用连接词有 and 等。如:

His father is a teacher ***and*** his mother is a doctor. 他的父亲是一位老师,母亲是一位医生。

2. 表示转折关系,常用连词 but, while 等。如:

I bought my sister a present, ***but*** she didn't like it. 我给妹妹买了一件礼物,但是她并不喜欢。

Tom does housework every day ***while*** his sister does nothing. 汤姆每天都做家务活,而他的妹妹什么也不做。

3. 表示选择关系,常用连词 or, either … or … 等。如:

Do it yourself ***or*** ask somebody else to do it. 你自己做这件事,或者请别人做也可以。

Either he could not come ***or*** he did not want to. 他要么是不能来,要么是不想来。

4. 表示因果关系,常用连词 so, for 等。如:

Her mother is ill, ***so*** she has to stay at home and look after her. 她的母亲病了,所以她不得不待在家里照顾她。

The ground is very wet, ***for*** it rained last night. 地面很湿,因为昨晚下雨了。

Ⅶ. 定语从句Ⅰ(Attributive Clauses Ⅰ)

在复合句中,修饰某一名词或代词的从句叫做定语从句,被修饰的名词或代词叫做先行词。从句放在所修饰词(即先行词)之后,由关系代词引导。如:

The story (***that***) you read is *The Rescue*. 你读的故事是《营救》。

He ***who*** laughs last laughs best.笑到最后的人笑得最好。

以上两句中的 story 和 he 是先行词,that 和 who 为关系代词,分别在定语从句中充当宾语和主语。

由关系代词引导的定语从句

引导词	所修饰的先行词	在从句中所作的成分	例句
who	人	主语、宾语、表语	The foreigner ***who*** visited our school yesterday is from Canada.(作主语)
whom	人	宾语	The boy (***whom***) we met is Li Ming's brother.(作宾语)
which	物	主语、宾语	The fish ***which*** we bought were not fresh.(作宾语)
whose	人或物	定语	Hang is the boy ***whose*** mother is our maths teacher.(作定语)
that	人或物	主语、宾语、表语	A plane is a machine ***that*** can fly.(作主语)

Words and Expressions in Each Unit 各单元词汇表

注:黑体词为《英语课程标准》要求掌握的词,白体词为课文中要求理解的词。单词后的数字是指此词第一次出现的页码。本词汇表采用 IPA(International Phonetic Alphabet 国际音标)标注系统。

Unit 1

Topic 1 Our country has developed rapidly.

take place 发生,进行 (1)
volunteer /ˌvɒlənˈtɪə(r)/ *n.*志愿者 (1)
bell /bel/ *n.*钟(铃)声;铃,钟 (1)
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/ *n.*非洲 (2)
disabled /dɪsˈeɪbld/ *adj.*残疾的,残废的 (3)
shut /ʃʌt/ *v.*关闭,关上 (4)
ever /ˈevə(r)/ *adv.*在任何时候,从来 (4)
rope /rəʊp/ *n.*绳子,绳索 (4)
narrow /ˈnærəʊ/ *adj.*狭窄的 (5)
communication /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/ *n.*通讯;交流;交往 (5)
various /ˈveriəs/; /ˈveəriəs/ *adj.*各种各样的;多姿多彩的 (5)
report /rɪˈpɔː(r)t/ *n.*& *v.*报告,汇报 (5)
keep in touch with… 跟……保持联系 (5)
relative /ˈrelətɪv/ *n.*亲属,亲戚 (5)
telegram /ˈtelɪgræm/ *n.*电报;电文 (5)
rapidly /ˈræpɪdli/ *adv.*快速地,迅速地 (6)
since /sɪns/ *prep.*自……以后,从……以来 (6)
*conj.*从……以后;既然,因为
reform /rɪˈfɔː(r)m/ *n.*改革,改良 (6)
reform and opening-up 改革开放 (6)
satisfy /ˈsætɪsfaɪ/ *v.*使满意,使满足 (6)
medical /ˈmedɪkl/ *adj.*医学的;医疗的 (6)
cellphone /ˈselfəʊn/ =mobile phone *n.*移动电话,手机 (6)
fax /fæks/ *n.*传真;传真机 (6)
machine /məˈʃiːn/ *n.*机器,机械 (6)
rapid /ˈræpɪd/ *adj.*迅速的,快速的 (6)
progress /ˈprɑːgres/; /ˈprəʊgres/ *n.*进步 (6)
*v.*进展;逐步发展
make progress 取得进展,取得进步 (6)
already /ɔːlˈredi/ *adv.*已经,早已 (6)
succeed in doing sth. 成功地做了某事 (6)
pleased /pliːzd/ *adj.*高兴的 (6)
leisure /ˈliːʒər/; /ˈleʒə(r)/ *n.*闲暇,空闲 (7)
hide /haɪd/ *v.*躲藏;遮挡;隐瞒 (7)
hide-and-seek /ˌhaɪd n ˈsiːk/ *n.*捉迷藏游戏 (7)
chess /tʃes/ *n.*国际象棋 (7)
radio /ˈreɪdiəʊ/ *n.*收音机 (7)
spare /speə(r)/ *adj.*空闲的;空余的 (7)
recent /ˈriːsnt/ *adj.*近来的,最近的 (8)
abroad /əˈbrɔːd/ *adv.*在国外;到国外 (8)

Topic 2 The population in developing countries is growing faster.

yet /jet/ *adv.*还,仍 (9)
probably /ˈprɑːbəbli/; /ˈprɒbəbli/ *adv.*很可能,大概 (9)
cinema /ˈsɪnəmə/ *n.*电影院 (10)
department /dɪˈpɑː(r)tmənt/ store 百货公司 (10)
nearby /ˌnɪəˈbaɪ/ *adj.*附近的,邻近的 (10)
*adv.*在附近,不远
population /ˌpɑːpjuˈleɪʃn/; /ˌpɒpjuˈleɪʃn/ *n.*人口,人数 (11)
billion /ˈbɪljən/ *num.*十亿 (11)

increase /ɪnˈkriːs/ *v.*(使)增加,(使)增大 (11)
/ˈɪŋkriːs/ *n.*增加,增多,增大
reach /riːtʃ/ *v.*实现;达到;够得着;到达 (11)
luckily /ˈlʌkɪli/ *adv.*幸运地,运气好地 (11)
policy /ˈpɑːləsi/; /ˈpɒləsi/ *n.*政策,方针 (11)
Russia /ˈrʌʃə/ *n.*俄罗斯 (12)
measure /ˈmeʒə(r)/ *n.*措施,方法 (12)
social /ˈsəʊʃl/ *adj.*社会的; 社交的 (13)
supply /səˈplaɪ/ *v.*提供,供应 (13)
*n.*供应量;补给;供应
natural /ˈnætʃrəl/ *adj.*天然的;天生的 (13)
worse /wɜː(r)s/ *adj.*更差的,更糟的 (13)
*adv.*更差,更糟
so far 到目前为止 (13)
government /ˈgʌvə(r)nmənt/ *n.*政府,内阁 (13)
take measures to do sth.采取措施做某事 (13)
thanks to 幸亏,由于 (13)
paragraph /ˈpærəgræf/; /ˈpærəgrɑːf/
*n.*段;段落 (13)
opportunity /ˌɑːpəˈtuːnəti/; /ˌɒpəˈtjuːnəti/
*n.*机会,时机 (14)
newborn /ˈnuːbɔːrn/; /ˈnjuːbɔːn/ *adj.*新生的,
初生的 (14)
percent /pə(r)ˈsent/ *n.*百分之…… (14)
offer /ˈɔːfə(r)/; /ˈɒfə(r)/ *v.*提供(东西或
机会);主动提出 (14)
surround /səˈraʊnd/ *v.*围绕,环绕 (15)
garbage /ˈgɑː(r)bɪdʒ/ *n.*(生活)垃圾,废物;
垃圾场 (15)
discourage /dɪsˈkɜːrɪdʒ/; /dɪsˈkʌrɪdʒ/
*v.*阻拦,阻止;使灰心 (15)
local /ˈləʊkl/ *adj.*当地的,本地的 (15)
capital /ˈkæpɪtl/ *n.*首都;资本 (16)
huge /hjuːdʒ/ *adj.*巨大的,极多的 (16)
market /ˈmɑː(r)kɪt/ *n.*集市,市场 (16)
transportation /ˌtrænspɔː(r)ˈteɪʃn/ *n.*运输
(16)
excellent /ˈeksələnt/ *adj.*优秀的,杰出的 (16)

Topic 3 The world has changed for the better.

as a matter of fact 事实上,其实 (17)
block /blɑːk/; /blɒk/ *n.*街道(区);(方形平面)
大块 (17)
artist /ˈɑː(r)tɪst/ *n.*艺术家,(尤指)画家 (18)
millions of 大量;数以百万计 (18)
visitor /ˈvɪzɪtə(r)/ *n.*游客;来访者;参观者 (18)
industry /ˈɪndəstri/ *n.*行业;工业 (18)
chemistry /ˈkemɪstri/ *n.*化学;化学物质 (18)
term /tɜː(r)m/ *n.*学期;词语;措辞 (18)
program /ˈprəʊgræm/ *n.*计划,方案;节目 (19)
homeless /ˈhəʊmləs/ *adj.*无家的 (19)
manage /ˈmænɪdʒ/ *v.*完成(困难的事);
能解决(问题) (19)
treatment /ˈtriːtmənt/ *n.*疗法,治疗 (19)
training /ˈtreɪnɪŋ/ *n.*训练,培训 (19)
immediately /ɪˈmiːdiətli/ *adv.*立刻,立即 (20)
*conj.*一……就,即刻
secretary /ˈsekrəteri/; /ˈsekrətri/ *n.*秘书 (20)
helper /ˈhelpə(r)/ *n.*帮手,助手 (20)
club /klʌb/ *n.*俱乐部 (20)
engineer /ˌendʒɪˈnɪə(r)/ *n.*工程师,设计师 (20)
wound /wuːnd/ *n.*创伤;伤口 (20)
*v.*伤,伤害
basic /ˈbeɪsɪk/ *adj.*基本的,基础的 (21)
human /ˈhjuːmən/ *adj.*人的 *n.*人 (21)
value /ˈvæljuː/ *v.*重视,珍视 (21)
n. 价值
period /ˈpɪəriəd/ *n.*一段时间,时期 (21)
shelter /ˈʃeltə(r)/ *n.*收容所;遮蔽物 (21)
homelessness /ˈhəʊmləsnəs/ *n.*无家可归 (21)
earn /ɜː(r)n/ *v.*挣钱;挣得,赢得 (21)
drug /drʌg/ *n.*毒品;药,药物 (21)
mental /ˈmentl/ *adj.*精神健康的;思想的 (21)
on purpose 故意,有意地 (21)
whatever /wɒtˈevə(r)/; /wɒtˈevə(r)/ *pron.*
无论什么,不管什么;任何事物 (21)
effect /ɪˈfekt/ *n.*影响,结果;效果 (21)
steal /stiːl/ *v.*偷,窃取 (21)
support /səˈpɔː(r)t/ *v.*帮助,援助;支持 (21)
phrase /freɪz/ *n.*短语,词组 (22)
according /əˈkɔː(r)dɪŋ/ to 据……所说,
按……所报道 (22)
context /ˈkɑːntekst/; /ˈkɒntekst/ *n.*上下文;

语境；背景 (22)
laborer /ˈleɪbərə(r)/ *n.* 体力劳动者，劳工，工人 (22)
cruel /kruːəl/ *adj.* 残酷的，冷酷的 (22)
project /ˈprɑːdʒekt/；/ˈprɒdʒekt/ *n.* 专题研究；项目；方案 (23)
primary /ˈpraɪmeri/；/ˈpraɪməri/ *adj.* 小学教育的；主要的；最初的 (23)
contribution /ˌkɑːntrɪˈbjuːʃn/；/ˌkɒntrɪˈbjuːʃn/ *n.* 贡献；捐款 (23)
make a contribution to 为……作贡献 (23)
encourage /ɪnˈkɜːrɪdʒ/；/ɪnˈkʌrɪdʒ/ *v.* 鼓励 (23)
moral /ˈmɔːrəl/；/ˈmɒrəl/ *adj.* 道德(上)的 (23)
development /dɪˈveləpmənt/ *n.* 发展；开发 (23)
respect /rɪˈspekt/ *v.* 尊敬，尊重 (24)
importance /ɪmˈpɔː(r)tns/ *n.* 重要性，重要 (24)
continue /kənˈtɪnjuː/ *v.* 持续，继续做 (24)
college /ˈkɑːlɪdʒ/；/ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ *n.* (美国)大学；(英国)学院 (24)

Review of Unit 1

indeed /ɪnˈdiːd/ *adv.* 真正地；实际上 (25)
method /ˈmeθəd/ *n.* 方法，办法 (25)
teenager /ˈtiːneɪdʒə(r)/ *n.* (13~19 岁之间的)青少年 (26)
hardly /ˈhɑː(r)dli/ *adv.* 几乎不 (26)
plenty /ˈplenti/ *pron.* 大量，众多，充足 (26)
n. 充足，大量
plenty of 大量的 (26)
sunshine /ˈsʌnʃaɪn/ *n.* 阳光，日光 (26)
sunbathe /ˈsʌnbeɪð/ *v.* 沐日光浴；晒太阳 (26)
beach /biːtʃ/ *n.* 海滩，海滨 (26)
volleyball /ˈvɑːlibɔːl/；/ˈvɒlibɔːl/ *n.* 排球 (26)
cultural /ˈkʌltʃərəl/ *adj.* 文化的 (26)
surf /sɜː(r)f/ *v.* (互联网上)冲浪，浏览 (26)

Unit 2

Topic 1 Pollution has caused too many problems.

bee /biː/ *n.* 蜜蜂 (27)
butterfly /ˈbʌtə(r)flaɪ/ *n.* 蝴蝶；蝶泳 (27)
mess /mes/ *n.* 肮脏，杂乱；困境 (27)
shame /ʃeɪm/ *n.* 羞耻，羞愧 (27)
several /ˈsevrəl/ *det.& pron.* 几个，数个 (27)
pour /pɔː(r)/ *v.* 倒出；倾泻；不断流出 (27)
waste /weɪst/ *adj.* 废弃的，丢弃的，无用的 (27)
v. 浪费
villager /ˈvɪlɪdʒə(r)/ *n.* 村民，乡下人 (28)
destroy /dɪˈstrɔɪ/ *v.* 摧毁，破灭 (28)
cut down 砍倒 (28)
pollute /pəˈluːt/ *v.* 污染 (28)
goodness /ˈgʊdnəs/ *n.* 天啊；啊呀 (28)
breathe /briːð/ *v.* 呼吸 (29)
pain /peɪn/ *n.* 疼，痛，痛苦 (29)
produce /prəˈduːs/；/prəˈdjuːs/ *v.* 生产，制造 (29)
chest /tʃest/ *n.* 胸部，胸膛 (29)
awful /ˈɔːfl/ *adj.* 很坏的，极讨厌的 (29)
bear /beə(r)/ *v.* 承受，忍受 (29)
editor /ˈedɪtə(r)/ *n.* 主编，编辑 (30)
breath /breθ/ *n.* 一次吸入的空气 (30)
soil /sɔɪl/ *n.* 土壤；土地 (30)
harmful /ˈhɑː(r)mfl/ *adj.* 有害的 (30)
be harmful to (尤指对健康或环境)有害的，导致损害的 (30)
deaf /def/ *adj.* 聋的 (31)
print /prɪnt/ *v.* 印刷 (31)
hearing /ˈhɪərɪŋ/ *n.* 听力，听觉 (31)
loss /lɔːs/；/lɒs/ *n.* 丧失；损失；丢失 (31)
recently /ˈriːsntli/ *adv.* 不久前；最近 (31)
disturb /dɪˈstɜː(r)b/ *v.* 打扰；扰乱 (31)
do harm to 伤害，损害 (31)
uncomfortable /ʌnˈkʌmftəbl/ *adj.* 使人不舒服的；令人不舒适的 (31)
unpleasant /ʌnˈplezənt/ *adj.* 令人不快的；不舒服的 (31)
sort /sɔː(r)t/ *n.* 种类，类别；品种 (31)
v. 整理；把……分类
environmental /ɪnˌvaɪrənˈmentl/ *adj.* 环境的 (31)
including /ɪnˈkluːdɪŋ / *prep.* 包括……在内 (31)
onto /ˈɑːntə/；/ˈɒntə/ *prep.* 向，朝 (31)
sentence /ˈsentəns/ *n.* 句子；判决，宣判 (32)

coal /kəʊl/ *n.*煤;煤块 (33)
create /kriˈeɪt/ *v.*造成;创造 (33)
blood /blʌd/ *n.*血 (33)
high blood pressure /ˈpreʃə(r)/ 高血压 (33)
planet /ˈplænɪt/ *n.*行星 (34)

Topic 2 All these problems are very serious.

sand /sænd/ *n.*沙 (35)
sandstorm /ˈsændstɔː(r)m/ *n.*沙暴 (35)
change into 转换成,变成 (35)
desert /ˈdezə(r)t/ *n.*沙漠 (35)
/dɪˈzɜː(r)t/ *v.*舍弃,遗弃
human being /ˈbiːɪŋ/ *n.*人 (35)
although /ɔːlˈðəʊ/ *conj.*虽然,尽管,即使 (35)
reduce /rɪˈduːs/; /rɪˈdjuːs/ *v.*减少;减轻 (36)
completely /kəmˈpliːtli/ *adv.*彻底地;完整地 (36)
user /ˈjuːzə(r)/ *n.*使用者;用户 (37)
none /nʌn/ *pron.*没有一个;毫无 (37)
rubbish /ˈrʌbɪʃ/ *n.*垃圾;废弃物 (37)
here and there 在各处;到处 (37)
spit /spɪt/ *v.*吐,唾 (37)
wild /waɪld/ *adj.*野的,野生的 (37)
nobody /ˈnəʊbədi/ *pron.*没有人
*n.*小人物,无足轻重的人 (38)
untidy /ʌnˈtaɪdi/ *adj.*不整洁的,凌乱的 (38)
worst /wɜː(r)st/ *adj.*最差的,最糟的 (38)
rude /ruːd/ *adj.*无理的,粗鲁的 (38)
behavior /bɪˈheɪvjə(r)/ *n.*行为,举止 (38)
situation /ˌsɪtʃuˈeɪʃn/ *n.*状况;形势;局面 (38)
punish /ˈpʌnɪʃ/ *v.*处罚,惩罚 (38)
perhaps /pə(r)ˈhæps/ *adv.*可能,大概 (38)
everybody /ˈevrɪbɑːdi/; /ˈevrɪbɒdi/
*pron.*人人,每个人 (38)
nowhere /ˈnəʊweə(r)/ *adv.*无处;哪里都不 (38)
take away 拿走 (39)
oxygen /ˈɑːksɪdʒən/; /ˈɒksɪdʒən/ *n.*氧气 (39)
hole /həʊl/ *n.*洞,坑 (39)
ozone layer /ˈəʊzəʊn ˈleɪə(r)/ 臭氧层 (39)
radiation /ˌreɪdɪˈeɪʃn/ *n.*放射,放射物 (39)
directly /dəˈrektli/*adv.*直接地 (39)
carbon dioxide /ˈkɑː(r)bən daɪˈɑːksaɪd/
二氧化碳 (39)
form /fɔː(r)m/ *v.*(使)出现;(使)形成 (39)
n. 种类;形式
blanket /ˈblæŋkɪt/ *n.*毛毯,毯子 (39)
escape /ɪˈskeɪp/ *v.*渗出;逃跑;逃脱 (39)
rise /raɪz/ *v.*上升;起床;升起 (39)
the greenhouse effect 温室效应 (39)
refer /rɪˈfɜː(r)/ to 提到,涉及,有关 (40)
shortage /ˈʃɔː(r)tɪdʒ/ *n.*不足;缺少;短缺 (41)
avoid /əˈvɔɪd/ *v.*防止,避免 (41)
resource /ˈriːsɔːrs/; /rɪˈsɔːs/ *n.*资源;财力 (41)
discover /dɪˈskʌvə(r)/ *v.*发现,找到 (41)
reuse /ˌriːˈjuːz/ *v.*再次使用;重复使用 (41)
thirsty /ˈθɜː(r)sti/ *adj.*缺水的;(口)渴的 (41)
nearly /ˈnɪəli/ *adv.*几乎,将近 (41)
law /lɔː/ *n.*法律,法令;定律 (42)

Topic 3 What can we do at home to protect the environment?

protection /prəˈtekʃn/ *n.*保护;防卫 (43)
organization /ˌɔːrgənəˈzeɪʃn/; /ˌɔːgənaɪˈzeɪʃn/
*n.*组织;团体;机构 (43)
recycle /ˌriːˈsaɪkl/ *n.*回收利用;再利用 (43)
plastic /ˈplæstɪk/ *adj.*塑料的 (43)
can /kæn/ *n.*(美)罐子;罐头 (43)
nod /nɑːd/; /nɒd/ *v.*点头 (44)
agreement /əˈgriːmənt/ *n.*同意;一致;协议 (44)
disagreement /ˌdɪsəˈgriːmənt/ *n.*分歧;争论 (44)
hurry /ˈhɜːri/; /ˈhʌri/ *v.*& *n.* 赶快,匆忙 (44)
hurry up 赶快,快点 (44)
give up 放弃 (44)
battery /ˈbætri/ ; /ˈbætəri/ *n.*电池 (44)
ought to /ˈɔːt tu/ *modal v.* 应该 (45)
shut off 停止,关掉 (45)
electricity /ɪˌlekˈtrɪsəti/ *n.*电;电能 (45)
distance /ˈdɪstəns/ *n.*距离 (45)
cloth /klɔːθ/;/klɒθ/ *n.*织物,布料 (45)
action /ˈækʃn/ *n.*行动;行为 (45)
after all 毕竟;归根结底 (46)
acid /ˈæsɪd/ rain 酸雨 (47)
nuclear /ˈnuːklɪə(r)/; /ˈnjuːklɪə(r)/
*adj.*原子核的,原子能的;核动力的 (47)

biogas /ˌbaɪəʊˈgæs/ *n.*沼气 (47)
technology /tekˈnɑːlədʒi/; /tekˈnɒlədʒi/ *n.*技术 (47)
straw /strɔː/ *n.*(收割后干燥的)禾秆,稻草 (47)
renewable /rɪˈnuːəbl/; /rɪˈnjuːəbl/ *adj.*可更新的,可再生的 (47)
disadvantage /ˌdɪsədˈvæntɪdʒ/; /ˌdɪsədˈvɑːntɪdʒ/ *n.* 不利因素;障碍;不便之处 (47)
process /ˈprɑːses/; /ˈprəʊses/ *n.*步骤,过程 *v.* 加工,处理 (47)
require /rɪˈkwaɪə(r)/ *v.*需要;要求 (47)
electric /ɪˈlektrɪk/ *adj.*用电的;电动的 (47)
best-known 最知名的 (47)
maglev /ˈmæglәv/ train 磁悬浮列车 (47)
German /ˈdʒɜː(r)mən/ *n.*德国人;德语 (47)
per /pə(r)/ *prep.*每,每一 (47)
wheel /wiːl/ *n.*轮,车轮,轮子 (47)
efficient /ɪˈfɪʃnt/ *adj.*效率高的,有能力的 (47)
guide /gaɪd/ *n.*向导,导游;指南,手册 (47)
path /pæθ/; /pɑːθ/ *n.*道路;途径 (47)
steel /stiːl/ *n.*钢,钢铁 (47)
wave /weɪv/ *n.*挥手;招手;海浪 *v.*招手;摆手 (48)
deep /diːp/ *adj.*深的;厚的 *adv.*深深地;在深处 (48)
source /sɔː(r)s/ *n.*来源,出处;起源;源头 (48)
run out 用完,耗尽 (48)
worldwide /ˈwɜː(r)ldwaɪd/ *adv.*全世界,世界各地 (48)
sunlight /ˈsʌnlaɪt/ *n.*阳光,日光 (48)
steam /stiːm/ *n.*水蒸气,蒸汽;水汽 (48)
remove /rɪˈmuːv/ *v.*去除,使消失;移开 (49)
replace /rɪˈpleɪs/ *v.*代替,取代 (49)
dry /draɪ/ *adj.*干燥的,雨少的;干性的 *v.*使……干;弄干,擦干 (94)
insect /ˈɪnsekt/ *n.*昆虫 (49)
bite /baɪt/ *v.*咬;叮 (49)
planter /ˈplæntə(r)/; /ˈplɑːntə(r)/ *n.*种植园主 (49)

Review of Units 1–2

colleague /ˈkɑːliːg/; /ˈkɒliːg/ *n.*同事,同僚 (52)
motorbike /ˈməʊtə(r)baɪk/ *n.*摩托车 (52)
gasoline /ˈgæsəliːn/ *n.*汽油 (52)
anybody /ˈenibɑːdi/; /ˈenibɒdi/ *pron.* 任何人,无论谁 (52)
examine /ɪgˈzæmɪn/ *v.*检查,调查 (53)
marry /ˈmæri/ *v.*嫁;娶;结婚 (53)
weight /we(ɪ)t/ *n.*重量;分量 (53)
media /ˈmiːdiə/ *n.*传播媒介,传播工具 (53)
package /ˈpækɪdʒ/ *n.*一包,一袋,一盒 *v.*将……包装好 (54)
product /ˈprɑːdʌkt/; /ˈprɒdʌkt/ *n.*产品,制品 (54)
excessive /ikˈsesiv/ *adj.*过度的;过分的 (54)
goods /gʊdz/ *n.*商品;货品 (54)
seriously /ˈsɪəriəsli/ *adv.*严重地;严肃地 (54)
video /ˈvɪdiəʊ/ *n.*录像带;录像 (54)
allow /əˈlaʊ/ *v.*允许,准许 (54)
quality /ˈkwɑːləti/; /ˈkwɒləti/ *n.*质量;品质;人品 (54)
historical /hɪˈstɔː(r)rɪkl/; /hɪˈstɒrɪkl/ *adj.*(有关)历史的 (54)
lifestyle /ˈlaɪfstaɪl/ *n.*生活方式;工作方式 (54)
difference /ˈdɪfrəns/ *n.*差别;差异 (54)

Unit 3

Topic 1 English is widely spoken throughout the world.

cartoon /kɑː(r)ˈtuːn/ *n.*漫画 (55)
character /ˈkærəktə(r)/ *n.*(书、剧本、电影等中的)人物,角色;(汉)字,字体;品格 (55)
widely /ˈwaɪdli/ *adv.*普通地;广泛地 (55)
throughout /θruːˈaʊt/ *prep.*遍及;贯穿 (55)
from now on 从今往后,从现在开始 (55)
foreigner /ˈfɔːrənə(r)/; /ˈfɒrənə(r)/ *n.* 外国人 (56)
film-maker 电影制作人 (56)

garage /gəˈrɑːʒ/；/ˈgærɑːʒ/ *n.*停车房；车库 (56)
be pleased with … 对……感到高兴；满意于…… (56)
on business 出差 (57)
tonight /təˈnaɪt/ *adv.*在今晚 (57)
Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/ *n.*西班牙语 (57)
*adj.*西班牙人的；西班牙的；西班牙语的
be similar to 与……相似，与……相像 (57)
communicate /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ *v.*沟通，交流 (57)
conversation /ˌkɑːnvərˈseɪʃn/；/ˌkɒnvəˈseɪʃn/ *n.*对话；谈话 (57)
interpreter /ɪnˈtɜː(r)prɪtə(r)/ *n.*口译译员 (57)
explain /ɪkˈspleɪn/ *v.*解释，说明 (57)
impossible /ɪmˈpɑːsəbl/；/ɪmˈpɒsəbl/ *adj.*不可能存在的；不可能的 (57)
twin /twɪn/ *adj.*双胞胎之一的 (58)
n. 双胞胎之一
divide /dɪˈvaɪd/ *v.*分，划分 (58)
divide … into … 把……分成…… (58)
dig /dɪg/ *v.*掘(地)；凿(洞)；挖(土) (58)
lay /leɪ/ *v.*放置，安放，搁 (58)
mother tongue /tʌŋ/ 母语 (59)
root /ruːt/ *n.*起源，根源；根；词根 (59)
trader /ˈtreɪdə(r)/ *n.*商人，买卖人 (59)
native /ˈneɪtɪv/ *adj.*出生地的，当地的 (59)
speaker /ˈspiːkə(r)/ *n.*讲(某种语言)的人；发言者 (59)
foreign /ˈfɔːrən/；/ˈfɒrən/ *adj.*外国的 (59)
base /beɪs/ *n.*根据；根基；总部 (59)
*v.*以……为基础(或根据)
European /ˌjʊ(ə)rəˈpiːən/ *adj.*欧洲的 (60)
kingdom /ˈkɪŋdəm/ *n.*王国；管辖范围；领域 (60)
tourism /ˈtʊ(ə)rɪzəm；ˈtɔːrɪzəm/ *n.*旅游业；观光 (60)
conference /ˈkɑːnfərəns/；/ˈkɒnfərəns/ *n.*(正式的)会议；商谈 (60)
tourist /ˈtʊrɪst/；/ˈtʊərɪst/ *n.*旅游者；游客 (60)
Britain /ˈbrɪtn/ *n.*英国；不列颠 (61)
powerful /ˈpaʊə(r)fl/ *adj.*强大的；有权势的；有影响力的 (61)
leading /ˈliːdɪŋ/ *adj.*最重要的，最成功的 (61)
position /pəˈzɪʃn/ *n.* 位置；方位 (61)

Topic 2 Some things usually have different meanings in different cultures.

see … off 为……送行；送别 (63)
stranger /ˈstreɪndʒə(r)/ *n.*陌生人 (63)
thumb /θʌm/ *n.*拇指 (63)
ask for a ride 搭乘，搭车 (63)
minibus /ˈmɪnibʌs/ *n.*小型公共汽车；中巴 (63)
give sb. a ride 让某人搭便车 (63)
get on 上车 (63)
flight /flaɪt/ *n.*航班飞机；空中航行 (63)
guidebook /ˈgaɪdbʊk/ *n.*旅游指南(或手册) (63)
whenever /wenˈevə(r)/ *conj.*无论何时，在任何……的时候 (63)
board /bɔː(r)d/ *v.*上(船、火车、飞机等)；住宿 (64)
bow /baʊ/ *v.*点头，鞠躬 (65)
silence /ˈsaɪləns/ *n.*沉默；无声 (65)
*v.*使安静；压制
hip /hɪp/ *n.*臀部；髋 (65)
praise /preɪz/ *v.*& *n.*表扬，赞扬 (65)
research /rɪˈsɜː(r)tʃ/ *n.*研究，调查，探索 (65)
do some research 做调查 (65)
secret /ˈsiːkrət/ *n.*秘密 (66)
puzzled /ˈpʌzld/ *adj.*困惑的 (66)
victory /ˈvɪktəri/ *n.*胜利 (66)
misunderstanding /ˌmɪsʌndə(r)ˈstændɪŋ/ *n.*误解，误会 (66)
typical /ˈtɪpɪkl/ *adj.*典型的，有代表性的 (66)
differently /ˈdɪfrəntli/ *adv.*不同地，有差异地 (67)
negative /ˈneɡətɪv/ *adj.*负面的，消极的 (67)
consider /kənˈsɪdə(r)/ *v.*认为，以为；考虑到 (67)
honest /ˈɑːnɪst/；/ˈɒnɪst/ *adj.*诚实的，老实的；坦率的 (67)
positive /ˈpɑːzətɪv/；/ˈpɒzətɪv/ *adj.*正面的；乐观的 (67)

at times 有时;间或 (67)
ancient /'eɪnʃənt/ *adj.*古代的;古老的 (67)
magical /'mædʒɪkl/ *adj.*奇妙的;有魔力的 (67)
creature /'kriːtʃə(r)/ *n.*生物;动物 (67)
emperor /'empərə(r)/ *n.*皇帝 (67)
compare /kəm'peə(r)/ *v.*比较,对比 (67)
compare … to … 把……比作…… (67)
courage /'kɜːrɪdʒ/; /'kʌrɪdʒ/ *n.*勇气;胆略 (67)
underline /ˌʌndə(r)'laɪn/ *v.*在(词语等下)画线;画底线标出 (68)
mistake /mɪ'steɪk/ *n.*错误,失误 (68)
*v.*误会,误解
make mistakes 犯错误 (68)
peacock /'piːkɑːk/; /'piːkɒk/ *n.*雄孔雀 (68)
pride /praɪd/ *n.*骄傲,自豪 (68)
wisdom /'wɪzdəm/ *n.*智慧,精明 (68)
British /'brɪtɪʃ/ *adj.*英国的,英国人的 (69)
kowtow /ˌkaʊ'taʊ/ *v.*叩头,磕头;唯命是从 (69)
expression /ɪk'spreʃn/ *n.*词语;表达;表情 (69)
spelling /'spelɪŋ/ *n.*拼写;拼法 (69)
elevator /'elɪveɪtə(r)/ *n.*电梯;升降机 (69)
pronunciation /prəˌnʌnsɪ'eɪʃn/ *n.*发音 (69)
cent /sent/ *n.*分 (70)
cookbook /'kʊkbʊk/ *n.*烹饪书,烹饪菜谱 (70)
totally /'təʊtəli/ *adv.*完全,全部地,整个地 (70)

Topic 3 Could you give us some advice on how to learn English well?

accent /'æksənt/; /'æksent/ *n.*口音,腔调 (71)
oral /'ɔːrəl/ *adj.*口头的 (71)
dare /deə(r)/ *modal v.*敢,敢于 (71)
sleepy /'sliːpi/ *adj.*想睡的,困倦的,瞌睡的 (71)
final /'faɪnl/ *adj.*最终的,最后的 (71)
real /'riːəl/ *adj.*真实的,实际存在的;真正的 (72)
retell /ˌriː'tel/ *v.*复述,重新讲述 (72)
indirect /ˌɪndaɪ'rekt;ˌɪndə'rekt/ *adj.*间接的,附带的 (72)
granddaughter /'grændɔːtə(r)/ *n.*(外)孙女 (72)
pronounce /prə'naʊns/ *v.*发音,读(音) (72)
dialog /'daɪəlɔːg/; /'daɪəlɒg/ *n.*对话,对白 (72)
composition /ˌkɑːmpə'zɪʃn/; /ˌkɒmpə'zɪʃn/ *n.*作文;作曲;构成 (72)
copy /'kɑːpi/; /'kɒpi/ *v.*抄写;复印 (72)
notebook /'nəʊtbʊk/ *n.*笔记本 (72)
diary /'daɪəri/ *n.*记事簿;日记,日记簿 (72)
keep a diary 写日记 (72)
tape /teɪp/ *n.*磁带,录音带 (72)
aloud /ə'laʊd/ *adv.*大声地 (73)
object /'ɑːbdʒekt/; /'ɒbdʒɪkt/ *n.*物品,东西;目的,目标 (73)
textbook /'tekstbʊk/ *n.*教科书,课本 (73)
ability /ə'bɪləti/ *n.*能力;才能 (73)
take a breath 吸一口气 (73)
toothpaste /'tuːθpeɪst/ *n.*牙膏 (74)
preview /'priːvjuː/ *v.*预习;预告 (75)
review /rɪ'vjuː/ *v.*复习;回顾 (75)
*n.*复习;复查;评论
translate /træns'leɪt/ *v.*翻译 (75)
discussion /dɪ'skʌʃn/ *n.*讨论,谈论,商讨 (75)
exactly /ɪg'zæktli/ *adv.*精确地,确切地 (75)
honor /'ɑːnər/; /'ɒnə(r)/ *n.*尊敬,荣幸 (75)
*v.*给予表扬(或者奖励、头衔、称号);尊敬,尊重
as long as 只要 (75)
stick to (doing) sth. 坚持(做)某事 (75)
chant /tʃænt/; /tʃɑːnt/ *n.*重复唱的歌词;圣歌 (75)
achieve /ə'tʃiːv/ *v.*达到,获得;成功 (76)
easily /'iːzəli/ *adv.*容易地,轻易地 (77)
download /ˌdaʊn'ləʊd/ *v.*下载 (77)
actually /'æktʃuəli/ *adv.*的确,事实上 (77)
effective /ɪ'fektɪv/ *adj.*有效的,产生预期效果的 (77)
imitate /'ɪmɪteɪt/ *v.*模仿,仿效 (78)

Review of Unit 3

company /'kʌmpəni/ *n.*公司 (79)
bored /bɔː(r)d/ *adj.*厌倦的,烦闷的 (80)
concentrate /'kɑːnsntreɪt/; /'kɒnsntreɪt/ *v.*集中(注意力),聚精会神 (80)
pull /pʊl/ *v.*拉;拽;扯;拖 (80)
fold /fəʊld/ *v.*折叠;包 (80)

mention /ˈmenʃn/ *v.*提到,说到 (80)

Unit 4

Topic 1 When was it invented?

rocket /ˈrɑːkɪt/; /ˈrɒkɪt/ *n.*火箭 (81)
metal /ˈmetl/ *n.*金属 (81)
satellite /ˈsætəlaɪt/ *n.*卫星 (81)
spaceship /ˈspeɪsʃɪp/ *n.*宇宙飞船 (81)
lock /lɑːk/; /lɒk/ *n.*锁 (82)
v.(用锁)锁上,被锁住
laptop /ˈlæptɑːp/; /ˈlæptɒp/ *n.*手提电脑 (82)
digital /ˈdɪdʒɪtl/ *adj.*数码的,数字的 (82)
bulb /bʌlb/ *n.*电灯泡 (83)
airplane /ˈeəpleɪn/ *n.*飞机 (83)
hard-wearing *adj.*耐磨的 (84)
Korea /kəˈrɪə/ *n.*朝鲜;韩国 (84)
invention /ɪnˈvenʃn/ *n.*发明, 创造 (85)
list /list/ *v.*列清单,把……列表 (85)
*n.*名单;目录;清单
crayon /ˈkreɪən/ *n.*彩色铅笔(粉笔、蜡笔)等 (85)
thought /θɔːt/ *n.*想法,看法,主意 (85)
silly /ˈsɪli/ *adj.*愚蠢的,傻的 (85)
brainstorm /ˈbreɪnstɔː(r)m/ *v.*集思广益,动脑筋 (85)
evaluate /ɪˈvæljueɪt/ *v.*估值,评价,评估 (85)
detailed /dɪˈteɪld/; /ˈdiːteɪld/ *adj.*详细的 (85)
redesign /ˌriːdɪˈzaɪn/ *v.*重新设计 (85)
imagination /ɪˌmædʒɪˈneɪʃn/ *n.*想像力;想像 (86)
balloon /bəˈluːn/ *n.*气球;热气球 (86)
gun /gʌn/ *n.*枪,炮 (86)
robot /ˈrəʊbɑːt/; /ˈrəʊbɒt/ *n.*机器人 (86)
keyboard /ˈkiːbɔː(r)d/ *n.*键盘 (86)
explorer /ɪkˈsplɔːrə(r)/ *n.*探险者,勘探者 (87)
mark /mɑː(r)k/ *n.*标示;记号;符号 (87)
*v.*做记号,做标记
system /ˈsɪstəm/ *n.*体系,方法,制度 (88)
man-made *adj.*人造的;非天然的 (88)

Topic 2 I'm excited about the things that will be discovered in the future.

display /dɪˈspleɪ/ *v.*显示,显露;展示 (90)
screen /skriːn/ *n.*屏幕;银幕 (90)
alien /ˈeɪliən/ *n.*外星人 (90)
adj. 陌生的;外国的;外星的
outer space 外层空间 (90)
describe /dɪˈskraɪb/ *v.*描述;形容;把……称为 (90)
astronaut /ˈæstrənɔːt/ *n.*宇航员 (91)
admire /ədˈmaɪə(r)/ *v.*钦佩,羡慕 (91)
master /ˈmæstə(r)/; /ˈmɑːstə(r)/
*v.*掌握,精通 (91)
*n.*主人
dancer /ˈdænsə(r)/; /ˈdɑːnsə(r)/ *n.*跳舞者,舞蹈演员 (91)
realize /ˈriːəlaɪz/; /ˈriəlaɪz/ *v.*(**realise** BrE)意识到,领会;实现 (91)
universe /ˈjuːnɪvɜː(r)s/ *n.*宇宙 (92)
solar /ˈsəʊlə(r)/ system 太阳系 (93)
Roman /ˈrəʊmən/ *adj.*古罗马的,古罗马帝国的 (93)
god /gɑːd/; /gɒd/ *n.*上帝;神 (93)
diameter /daɪˈæmɪtə(r)/ *n.*直径 (93)
storm /stɔː(r)m/ *n.*风暴,暴(风)雨 (93)
gravity /ˈgrævəti/ *n.*重力;引力 (93)
weigh /weɪ/ *v.*重,有……重 (93)
generally /ˈdʒenrəli/ *adv.*一般地,通常 (94)
journey /ˈdʒɜː(r)ni/ *n.*(尤指长途)旅行 (94)
limit /ˈlɪmɪt/ *v.*限制,限定 (94)
*n.*限度;限制
excitement /ɪkˈsaɪtmənt/ *n.*激动;令人激动的事 (94)
launch /lɔːntʃ/ *v.*发射;发起;发行 (95)
beyond /bɪˈjɑːnd/; /bɪˈjɒnd/ *prep.*超出;除……之外 (95)

Topic 3 China is the third nation that sent a person into space.

prove /pruːv/ *v.*证明,证实 (97)
lunar probe /prəʊb/ 月球探测器 (97)
legend /ˈledʒənd/ *n.*传说,传奇故事 (97)
significance /sɪgˈnɪfɪkəns/ *n.*重要性,意义 (98)
independently /ˌɪndɪˈpendəntli/ *adv.*独立地,自主地 (98)

landmark /ˈlændmɑː(r)k/ *n.*里程碑;陆标 (98)
spacewalk /ˈspeɪswɔːk/ *n.*太空漫步 (98)
electronic /ɪˌlekˈtrɑːnɪk/; /ɪˌlekˈtrɒnɪk/ *adj.* 电子的 (99)
spacesuit /ˈspeɪssuːt;ˈspeɪssjuːt/ *n.*航天服 (100)
telescope /ˈtelɪskəʊp/ *n.*望远镜 (100)
entertainment /ˌentə(r)ˈteɪnmənt/ *n.*娱乐;招待 (101)
doubt /daʊt/ *n.*& *v.*怀疑,疑惑 (101)
no doubt 无疑地 (101)
tiny /ˈtaɪni/ *adj.*极小的,微小的 (101)
inside /ˌɪnˈsaɪd/ *prep.*在……内;在……里 (101)
adv. 在里面
normally /ˈnɔː(r)məli/ *adv.*通常,正常情况下 (101)
brain /breɪn/ *n.*脑;智力;脑力 (101)
cancel /ˈkænsl/ *v.*取消,撤销;废止 (101)
workplace /ˈwɜː(r)kpleɪs/ *n.*工作场所 (101)
connect /kəˈnekt/ *v.*连接;把……联系起来 (101)
for instance 例如 (101)
besides /bɪˈsaɪdz/ *adv.* 而且, 再说 (102)
prep. 除……之外(还)
properly /ˈprɑːpərli/; /ˈprɒpəli/ *adv.* 正确地,恰当地 (102)
servant /ˈsɜː(r)vənt/ *n.*仆人,佣人 (103)
certain /ˈsɜː(r)tn/ *adj.*确定的,无疑的;一定会…… (103)
for certain 肯定,确定,无疑 (103)
on one's own 独自,单独 (103)
warn /wɔː(r)n/ *v.*警告,告诫 (103)
might /maɪt/ *modal v.*可以,可能 (104)
housework /ˈhaʊswɜː(r)k/ *n.*家务劳动,家务事 (104)

Review of Units 3–4

waitress /ˈweɪtrəs/ *n.*女服务员 (105)
magazine /ˈmægəziːn/; /ˌmægəˈziːn/ *n.*杂志 (105)
rooster /ˈruːstə(r)/ *n.*公鸡 (105)
wife /waɪf/ *n.*妻子,太太 (105)
chick /tʃɪk/ *n.*小鸡 (105)
paint /peɪnt/ *n.*油漆;油漆涂层 (105)
*v.*在……刷油漆;用颜料画
struggle /ˈstrʌgl/ *v.*奋斗;努力;争取 (105)
palace /ˈpæləs/ *n.*王宫,宫殿 (106)
the Summer Palace 颐和园 (106)
tower /ˈtaʊə(r)/ *n.*塔 (106)
prison /ˈprɪzn/ *n.*监狱 (106)
prisoner /ˈprɪznə(r)/ *n.*囚犯;俘虏 (106)
vocabulary /vəˈkæbjələri/; /vəˈkæbjələri/ *n.* 词汇;词汇量 (107)
a bunch /bʌntʃ/ of 一束;一串 (108)

说明:本词汇表音标根据《牛津高阶英汉双解词典》(第 6 版)标注。

Vocabulary 词汇表

注：黑体词为《英语课程标准》要求掌握的词，白体词为课文中要求理解的词。单词后的数字是指此词第一次出现的页码。本词汇表采用 IPA（International Phonetic Alphabet 国际音标）标注系统。

A

ability /əˈbɪlətɪ/ *n.*能力；才能 (73)
abroad /əˈbrɔːd/ *adv.*在国外；到国外 (8)
a bunch /bʌntʃ/ of 一束；一串 (108)
accent /ˈæksənt/；/ˈæksent/ *n.*口音，腔调 (71)
according /əˈkɔː(r)dɪŋ/ to 据……所说，按……所报道 (22)
achieve /əˈtʃiːv/ *v.*达到，获得；成功 (76)
acid /ˈæsɪd/ rain 酸雨 (47)
action /ˈækʃn/ *n.*行动；行为 (45)
actually /ˈæktʃuəlɪ/ *adv.*的确，事实上 (77)
admire /ədˈmaɪə(r)/ *v.*钦佩，羡慕 (91)
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/ *n.*非洲 (2)
after all 毕竟；归根结底 (46)
agreement /əˈgriːmənt/ *n.*同意；一致；协议 (44)
airplane /ˈeəpleɪn/ *n.*飞机 (83)
alien /ˈeɪlɪən/ *n.*外星人 (90)
adj. 陌生的；外国的；外星的
allow /əˈlaʊ/ *v.*允许，准许 (54)
aloud /əˈlaʊd/ *adv.*大声地 (73)
already /ɔːlˈredɪ/ *adv.*已经，早已 (6)
although /ɔːlˈðəʊ/ *conj.*虽然，尽管，即使 (35)
ancient /ˈeɪnʃənt/ *adj.*古代的；古老的 (67)
anybody /ˈenibɑːdɪ/；/ˈenibɒdɪ/ *pron.* 任何人，无论谁 (52)
artist /ˈɑː(r)tɪst/ *n.*艺术家，(尤指)画家 (18)
as a matter of fact 事实上，其实 (17)
ask for a ride 搭乘，搭车 (63)
as long as 只要 (75)
astronaut /ˈæstrənɔːt/ *n.*宇航员 (91)
at times 有时；间或 (67)
avoid /əˈvɔɪd/ *v.*防止，避免 (41)
awful /ˈɔːfl/ *adj.*很坏的，极讨厌的 (29)

B

balloon /bəˈluːn/ *n.*气球；热气球 (86)
base /beɪs/ *n.*根据；根基；总部 (59)
*v.*以……为基础(或根据)
basic /ˈbeɪsɪk/ *adj.*基本的，基础的 (21)
battery /ˈbætrɪ/ ；/ˈbætərɪ/ *n.*电池 (44)
beach /biːtʃ/ *n.*海滩，海滨 (26)
bear /beə(r)/ *v.*承受，忍受 (29)
bee /biː/ *n.*蜜蜂 (27)
be harmful to … (尤指对健康或环境)有害的，导致损害的 (30)
behavior /bɪˈheɪvjə(r)/ *n.*行为，举止 (38)
bell /bel/ *n.*钟(铃)声；铃，钟 (1)
be pleased with … 对……感到高兴；满意于…… (56)
besides /bɪˈsaɪdz/ *adv.* 而且，再说 (102)
prep. 除……之外(还)
be similar to 与……相似，与……相像 (57)
best-known 最知名的 (47)
beyond /bɪˈjɑːnd/；/bɪˈjɒnd/ *prep.*超出；除……之外 (95)
billion /ˈbɪljən/ *num.*十亿 (11)
biogas /ˌbaɪəʊˈgæs/ *n.*沼气 (47)
bite /baɪt/ *v.*咬；叮 (49)
blanket /ˈblæŋkɪt/ *n.*毛毯，毯子 (39)
block /blɑːk/；/blɒk/ *n.*街道(区)；(方形平面)

大块 (17)

blood /blʌd/ *n.*血 (33)

board /bɔː(r)d/ *v.*上(船、火车、飞机等);住宿 (64)

bored /bɔː(r)d/ *adj.*厌倦的,烦闷的 (80)

bow /baʊ/ *v.*点头,鞠躬 (65)

brain /breɪn/ *n.*脑;智力;脑力 (101)

brainstorm /ˈbreɪnstɔː(r)m/ *v.*集思广益,动脑筋 (85)

breath /breθ/ *n.*一次吸入的空气 (30)

breathe /briːð/ *v.*呼吸 (29)

Britain /ˈbrɪtn/ *n.*英国;不列颠 (61)

British /ˈbrɪtɪʃ/ *adj.*英国的,英国人的 (69)

bulb /bʌlb/ *n.*电灯泡 (83)

butterfly /ˈbʌtə(r)flaɪ/ *n.*蝴蝶;蝶泳 (27)

C

can /kæn/ *n.*(美)罐子;罐头 (43)

cancel /ˈkænsl/ *v.*取消,撤销;废止 (101)

capital /ˈkæpɪtl/ *n.*首都;资本 (16)

carbon dioxide /ˈkɑː(r)bən daɪˈɑːksaɪd/ 二氧化碳 (39)

cartoon /kɑː(r)ˈtuːn/ *n.*漫画 (55)

cellphone /ˈselfəʊn/ =mobile phone *n.*移动电话,手机 (6)

cent /sent/ *n.*分 (70)

certain /ˈsɜː(r)tn/ *adj.*确定的,无疑的;一定会…… (103)

change into 转换成,变成 (35)

chant /tʃænt/; /tʃɑːnt/ *n.*重复唱的歌词;圣歌 (75)

character /ˈkærəktə(r)/ *n.*(书、剧本、电影等中的)人物,角色;(汉)字,字体;品格 (55)

chemistry /ˈkemɪstri/ *n.*化学;化学物质 (18)

chess /tʃes/ *n.*国际象棋 (7)

chest /tʃest/ *n.*胸部,胸膛 (29)

chick /tʃɪk/ *n.*小鸡 (105)

cinema /ˈsɪnəmə/ *n.*电影院 (10)

cloth /klɔːθ/; /klɒθ/ *n.*织物,布料 (45)

club /klʌb/ *n.*俱乐部 (20)

coal /kəʊl/ *n.*煤;煤块 (33)

colleague /ˈkɑːliːg/; /ˈkɒliːg/ *n.*同事,同僚 (52)

college /ˈkɑːlɪdʒ/; /ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ *n.*(美国)大学;(英国)学院 (24)

communicate /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ *v.*沟通,交流 (57)

communication /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/ *n.*通讯;交流;交往 (5)

company /ˈkʌmpəni/ *n.*公司 (79)

compare /kəmˈpeə(r)/ *v.*比较,对比 (67)

compare … to … 把……比作…… (67)

completely /kəmˈpliːtli/ *adv.*彻底地;完整地 (36)

composition /ˌkɑːmpəˈzɪʃn/; /ˌkɒmpəˈzɪʃn/ *n.*作文;作曲;构成 (72)

concentrate /ˈkɑːnsntreɪt/; /ˈkɒnsntreɪt/ *v.*集中(注意力),聚精会神 (80)

conference /ˈkɑːnfərəns/; /ˈkɒnfərəns/ *n.*(正式的)会议;商谈 (60)

connect /kəˈnekt/ *v.*连接;把……联系起来 (101)

consider /kənˈsɪdə(r)/ *v.*认为,以为;考虑到 (67)

context /ˈkɑːntekst/; /ˈkɒntekst/ *n.*上下文;语境;背景 (22)

continue /kənˈtɪnjuː/ *v.*持续,继续做 (24)

contribution /ˌkɑːntrɪˈbjuːʃn/; /ˌkɒntrɪˈbjuːʃn/ *n.*贡献;捐款 (23)

conversation /ˌkɑːnvərˈseɪʃn/; /ˌkɒnvəˈseɪʃn/ *n.*对话;谈话 (57)

cookbook /ˈkʊkbʊk/ *n.*烹饪书,烹饪菜谱 (70)

copy /ˈkɑːpi/; /ˈkɒpi/ *v.*抄写;复印 (72)

courage /ˈkɜːrɪdʒ/; /ˈkʌrɪdʒ/ *n.*勇气;胆略 (67)

crayon /ˈkreɪən/ *n.*彩色铅笔(粉笔、蜡笔)等 (85)

create /kriˈeɪt/ *v.*造成;创造 (33)

creature /ˈkriːtʃə(r)/ *n.*生物;动物 (67)

cruel /kruːəl/ *adj.* 残酷的,冷酷的 (22)

cultural /ˈkʌltʃərəl/ *adj.*文化的 (26)

cut down 砍倒 (28)

D

dancer /ˈdænsə(r)/; /ˈdɑːnsə(r)/ *n.*跳舞者,

舞蹈演员 (91)
dare /deə(r)/ *modal v.*敢,敢于 (71)
deaf /def/ *adj.*聋的 (31)
deep /di:p/ *adj.*深的;厚的 (48)
*adv.*深深地;在深处
department /dɪ'pɑ:(r)tmənt/ store 百货公司 (10)
describe /dɪ'skraɪb/ *v.*描述;形容;把……称为 (90)
desert /'dezə(r)t/ *n.*沙漠 (35)
/dɪ'zɜ:(r)t/ *v.*舍弃,遗弃
destroy /dɪ'strɔɪ/ *v.*摧毁,破灭 (28)
detailed /dɪ'teɪld/; /'di:teɪld/ *adj.*详细的 (85)
development /dɪ'veləpmənt/ *n.*发展;开发 (23)
dialog /'daɪəlɔ:g/; /'daɪəlɒg/ *n.*对话,对白 (72)
diameter /daɪ'æmɪtə(r)/ *n.*直径 (93)
diary /'daɪəri/ *n.*记事簿;日记,日记簿 (72)
difference /'dɪfrəns/ *n.*差别;差异 (54)
differently /'dɪfrəntli/ *adv.*不同地,有差异地 (67)
dig /dɪg/ *v.*掘(地);凿(洞);挖(土) (58)
digital /'dɪdʒɪtl/ *adj.*数码的,数字的 (82)
directly /də'rektli/ *adv.*直接地 (39)
disabled /dɪs'eɪbld/ *adj.*残疾的,残废的 (3)
disadvantage /ˌdɪsəd'væntɪdʒ/; /ˌdɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ *n.* 不利因素;障碍;不便之处 (47)
disagreement /ˌdɪsə'gri:mənt/ *n.*分歧;争论 (44)
discourage /dɪs'kɜ:rɪdʒ/; /dɪs'kʌrɪdʒ/ *v.* 阻拦,阻止;使灰心 (15)
discover /dɪ'skʌvə(r)/ *v.*发现,找到 (41)
discussion /dɪ'skʌʃn/ *n.*讨论,谈论,商讨 (75)
display /dɪ'spleɪ/ *v.*显示,显露;展示 (90)
distance /'dɪstəns/ *n.*距离 (45)
disturb /dɪ'stɜ:(r)b/ *v.*打扰;扰乱 (31)
divide /dɪ'vaɪd/ *v.*分,划分 (58)
divide … into … 把……分成…… (58)
do harm to 伤害,损害 (31)
do some research 做调查 (65)
doubt /daʊt/ *n.*& *v.*怀疑,疑惑 (101)
download /ˌdaʊn'ləʊd/ *v.*下载 (77)
drug /drʌg/ *n.*毒品;药,药物 (21)
dry /draɪ/ *adj.*干燥的,雨少的;干性的 (49)
*v.*使……干;弄干,擦干 (94)

E

earn /ɜ:(r)n/ *v.*挣钱;挣得,赢得 (21)
easily /'i:zəli/ *adv.*容易地,轻易地 (77)
editor /'edɪtə(r)/ *n.*主编,编辑 (30)
effect /ɪ'fekt/ *n.*影响,结果;效果 (21)
effective /ɪ'fektɪv/ *adj.*有效的,产生预期效果的 (77)
efficient /ɪ'fɪʃnt/ *adj.*效率高的,有能力的 (47)
electric /ɪ'lektrɪk/ *adj.*用电的;电动的 (47)
electricity /ɪˌlek'trɪsəti/ *n.*电;电能 (45)
electronic /ɪˌlek'trɑ:nɪk/; /ɪˌlek'trɒnɪk/ *adj.* 电子的 (99)
elevator /'elɪveɪtə(r)/ *n.*电梯;升降机 (69)
emperor /'empərə(r)/ *n.*皇帝 (67)
encourage /ɪn'kɜ:rɪdʒ/; /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/ *v.*鼓励 (23)
engineer /ˌendʒɪ'nɪə(r)/ *n.*工程师,设计师 (20)
entertainment /ˌentə(r)'teɪnmənt/ *n.*娱乐;招待 (101)
environmental /ɪnˌvaɪrən'mentl/ *adj.*环境的 (31)
escape /ɪ'skeɪp/ *v.*渗出;逃跑;逃脱 (39)
European /ˌjʊ(ə)rə'pi:ən/ *adj.*欧洲的 (60)
evaluate /ɪ'væljueɪt/ *v.*估值,评价,评估 (85)
ever /'evə(r)/ *adv.*在任何时候,从来 (4)
everybody /'evribɑ:di/; /'evribɒdi/ *pron.*人人,每个人 (38)
exactly /ɪg'zæktli/ *adv.*精确地,确切地 (75)
examine /ɪg'zæmɪn/ *v.*检查,调查 (53)
excellent /'eksələnt/ *adj.*优秀的,杰出的 (16)
excessive /ɪk'sesɪv/ *adj.*过度的;过分的 (54)
excitement /ɪk'saɪtmənt/ *n.*激动;令人激动的事 (94)
explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ *v.*解释,说明 (57)
explorer /ɪk'splɔ:rə(r)/ *n.*探险者,勘探者 (87)
expression /ɪk'spreʃn/ *n.*词语;表达;表情 (69)

F

fax /fæks/ *n.*传真;传真机 (6)
film-maker 电影制作人 (56)
final /ˈfaɪnl/ *adj.*最终的,最后的 (71)
flight /flaɪt/ *n.*航班飞机;空中航行 (63)
fold /fəʊld/ *v.*折叠;包 (80)
for certain 肯定,确定,无疑 (103)
foreign /ˈfɔːrən/; /ˈfɒrən/ *adj.*外国的 (59)
foreigner /ˈfɔːrənə(r)/; /ˈfɒrənə(r)/ *n.* 外国人 (56)
for instance 例如 (101)
form /fɔː(r)m/ *v.*(使)出现;(使)形成 (39)
n. 种类;形式
from now on 从今往后,从现在开始 (55)

G

garage /gəˈrɑːʒ/; /ˈgærɑːʒ/ *n.*停车房;车库 (56)
garbage /ˈgɑː(r)bɪdʒ/ *n.*(生活)垃圾,废物;垃圾场 (15)
gasoline /ˈgæsəliːn/ *n.*汽油 (52)
generally /ˈdʒenrəli/ *adv.*一般地,通常 (94)
German /ˈdʒɜː(r)mən/ *n.*德国人;德语 (47)
get on 上车 (63)
give sb. a ride 让某人搭便车 (63)
give up 放弃 (44)
god /gɑːd/; /gɒd/ *n.*上帝;神 (93)
goodness /ˈgʊdnəs/ *n.*天啊;啊呀 (28)
goods /gʊdz/ *n.*商品;货品 (54)
government /ˈgʌvə(r)nmənt/ *n.*政府,内阁 (13)
granddaughter /ˈgrændɔːtə(r)/ *n.*(外)孙女 (72)
gravity /ˈgrævəti/ *n.*重力;引力 (93)
guide /gaɪd/ *n.*向导,导游;指南,手册 (47)
guidebook /ˈgaɪdbʊk/ *n.*旅游指南(或手册) (63)
gun /gʌn/ *n.*枪,炮 (86)

H

hardly /ˈhɑː(r)dli/ *adv.*几乎不 (26)
hard-wearing *adj.*耐磨的 (84)
harmful /ˈhɑː(r)mfl/ *adj.*有害的 (30)
hearing /ˈhɪərɪŋ/ *n.*听力,听觉 (31)
helper /ˈhelpə(r)/ *n.*帮手,助手 (20)
here and there 在各处;到处 (37)
hide /haɪd/ *v.*躲藏;遮挡;隐瞒 (7)
hide-and-seek /ˌhaɪd n ˈsiːk/ *n.*捉迷藏游戏 (7)
high blood pressure /ˈpreʃə(r)/ 高血压 (33)
hip /hɪp/ *n.*臀部;髋 (65)
historical /hɪˈstɔː(r)rɪkl/; /hɪˈstɒrɪkl/ *adj.*(有关)历史的 (54)
hole /həʊl/ *n.*洞,坑 (39)
homeless /ˈhəʊmləs/ *adj.*无家的 (19)
homelessness /ˈhəʊmləsnəs/ *n.*无家可归 (21)
honest /ˈɑːnɪst/; /ˈɒnɪst/ *adj.*诚实的,老实的;坦率的 (67)
honor /ˈɑːnər/; /ˈɒnə(r)/ *n.*尊敬,荣幸 (75)
*v.*给予表扬(或者奖励、头衔、称号);尊敬,尊重
housework /ˈhaʊswɜː(r)k/ *n.*家务劳动,家务事 (104)
huge /hjuːdʒ/ *adj.*巨大的,极多的 (16)
human /ˈhjuːmən/ *adj.* 人的 *n.*人 (21)
human being /ˈbiːɪŋ/ *n.*人 (35)
hurry /ˈhɜːri/; /ˈhʌri/ *v.*& *n.* 赶快,匆忙 (44)
hurry up 赶快,快点 (44)

I

imagination /ɪˌmædʒɪˈneɪʃn/ *n.*想像力;想像 (86)
imitate /ˈɪmɪteɪt/ *v.*模仿,仿效 (78)
immediately /ɪˈmiːdiətli/ *adv.*立刻,立即 (20)
*conj.*一……就,即刻
importance /ɪmˈpɔː(r)tns/ *n.*重要性,重要 (24)
impossible /ɪmˈpɑːsəbl/; /ɪmˈpɒsəbl/ *adj.* 不可能存在的;不可能的 (57)
including /ɪnˈkluːdɪŋ/ *prep.*包括……在内 (31)
increase /ɪnˈkriːs/ *v.*(使)增加,(使)增大 (11)
/ˈɪŋkriːs/ *n.*增加,增多,增大
indeed /ɪnˈdiːd/ *adv.*真正地;实际上 (25)
independently /ˌɪndɪˈpendəntli/ *adv.*独立地,

自主地 (98)
indirect /ˌɪndaɪˈrekt；ˌɪndəˈrekt/ *adj.*间接的，附带的 (72)
industry /ˈɪndəstri/ *n.*行业；工业 (18)
insect /ˈɪnsekt/ *n.*昆虫 (49)
inside /ˌɪnˈsaɪd/ *prep.*在……内；在……里 (101)
adv. 在里面
interpreter /ɪnˈtɜː(r)prɪtə(r)/ *n.*口译译员 (57)
invention /ɪnˈvenʃn/ *n.*发明，创造 (85)

J

journey /ˈdʒɜː(r)ni/ *n.*(尤指长途)旅行 (94)

K

keep a diary 写日记 (72)
keep in touch with… 跟……保持联系 (5)
keyboard /ˈkiːbɔː(r)d/ *n.*键盘 (86)
kingdom /ˈkɪŋdəm/ *n.*王国；管辖范围；领域 (60)
Korea /kəˈrɪə/ *n.*朝鲜；韩国 (84)
kowtow /ˌkaʊˈtaʊ/ *v.*叩头，磕头；唯命是从 (69)

L

laborer /ˈleɪbərə(r)/ *n.* 体力劳动者，劳工，工人 (22)
landmark /ˈlændmɑː(r)k/ *n.*里程碑；陆标 (98)
laptop /ˈlæptɑːp/；/ˈlæptɒp/ *n.*手提电脑 (82)
launch /lɔːntʃ/ *v.*发射；发起；发行 (95)
law /lɔː/ *n.*法律，法令；定律 (42)
lay /leɪ/ *v.*放置，安放，搁 (58)
leading /ˈliːdɪŋ/ *adj.*最重要的，最成功的 (61)
legend /ˈledʒənd/ *n.*传说，传奇故事 (97)
leisure /ˈliːʒər/；/ˈleʒə(r)/ *n.*闲暇，空闲 (7)
lifestyle /ˈlaɪfstaɪl/ *n.*生活方式；工作方式 (54)
limit /ˈlɪmɪt/ *v.*限制，限定 (94)
*n.*限度；限制
list /list/ *v.*列清单，把……列表 (85)
*n.*名单；目录；清单
local /ˈləʊkl/ *adj.*当地的，本地的 (15)
lock /lɑːk/；/lɒk/ *n.*锁
v.(用锁)锁上，被锁住 (82)
loss /lɔːs/；/lɒs/ *n.*丧失；损失；丢失 (31)
luckily /ˈlʌkɪli/ *adv.*幸运地，运气好地 (11)
lunar probe /prəʊb/ 月球探测器 (97)

M

machine /məˈʃiːn/ *n.*机器，机械 (6)
magazine /ˈmægəziːn/；/ˌmægəˈziːn/ *n.*杂志 (105)
magical /ˈmædʒɪkl/ *adj.*奇妙的；有魔力的 (67)
maglev /ˈmægləv/ train 磁悬浮列车 (47)
make a contribution to 为……作贡献 (23)
make mistakes 犯错误 (68)
make progress 取得进展，取得进步 (6)
manage /ˈmænɪdʒ/ *v.*完成(困难的事)；能解决(问题) (19)
man-made *adj.*人造的；非天然的 (88)
mark /mɑː(r)k/ *n.*标示；记号；符号 (87)
*v.*做记号，做标记
market /ˈmɑː(r)kɪt/ *n.*集市，市场 (16)
marry /ˈmæri/ *v.*嫁；娶；结婚 (53)
master /ˈmæstə(r)/；/ˈmɑːstə(r)/ *v.*掌握，精通 (91)
*n.*主人
measure /ˈmeʒə(r)/ *n.*措施，方法 (12)
media /ˈmiːdiə/ *n.*传播媒介，传播工具 (53)
medical /ˈmedɪkl/ *adj.*医学的；医疗的 (6)
mental /ˈmentl/ *adj.*精神健康的；思想的 (21)
mention /ˈmenʃn/ *v.*提到，说到 (80)
mess /mes/ *n.*肮脏，杂乱；困境 (27)
metal /ˈmetl/ *n.*金属 (81)
method /ˈmeθəd/ *n.*方法，办法 (25)
might /maɪt/ *modal v.*可以，可能 (104)
millions of 大量；数以百万计 (18)
minibus /ˈmɪnibʌs/ *n.*小型公共汽车；中巴 (63)
mistake /mɪˈsteɪk/ *n.*错误，失误 (68)
*v.*误会，误解
misunderstanding /ˌmɪsʌndə(r)ˈstændɪŋ/ *n.*误解，误会 (66)
moral /ˈmɔːrəl/；/ˈmɒrəl/ *adj.*道德(上)的 (23)
mother tongue /tʌŋ/ 母语 (59)
motorbike /ˈməʊtə(r)baɪk/ *n.*摩托车 (52)

N

narrow /ˈnærəʊ/ *adj.*狭窄的 (5)
native /ˈneɪtɪv/ *adj.*出生地的,当地的 (59)
natural /ˈnætʃrəl/ *adj.*天然的;天生的 (13)
nearby /ˌnɪəˈbaɪ/ *adj.*附近的,邻近的 (10)
*adv.*在附近, 不远
nearly /ˈnɪəli/ *adv.*几乎,将近 (41)
negative /ˈnegətɪv/ *adj.*负面的,消极的 (67)
newborn /ˈnuːbɔːrn/; /ˈnjuːbɔːn/ *adj.*新生的, 初生的 (14)
nobody /ˈnəʊbədi/ *pron.*没有人
*n.*小人物,无足轻重的人 (38)
nod /nɑːd/; /nɒd/ *v.*点头 (44)
no doubt 无疑地 (101)
none /nʌn/ *pron.*没有一个;毫无 (37)
normally /ˈnɔː(r)məli/ *adv.*通常,正常情况下 (101)
notebook /ˈnəʊtbʊk/ *n.*笔记本 (72)
nowhere /ˈnəʊweə(r)/ *adv.*无处;哪里都不 (38)
nuclear /ˈnuːklɪə(r)/; /ˈnjuːklɪə(r)/
*adj.*原子核的,原子能的;核动力的 (47)

O

object /ˈɑːbdʒekt/; /ˈɒbdʒɪkt/ *n.*物品,东西; 目的,目标 (73)
offer /ˈɔːfə(r)/; /ˈɒfə(r)/ *v.*提供(东西或机会);主动提出 (14)
on business 出差 (57)
on one's own 独自,单独 (103)
on purpose 故意,有意地 (21)
onto /ˈɑːntə/; /ˈɒntə/ *prep.*向,朝 (31)
opportunity /ˌɑːpərˈtuːnəti/; /ˌɒpəˈtjuːnəti/
*n.*机会,时机 (14)
oral /ˈɔːrəl/ *adj.*口头的 (71)
organization /ˌɔːrgənəˈzeɪʃn/; /ˌɔːgənaɪˈzeɪʃn/
*n.*组织;团体;机构 (43)
ought to /ˈɔːt tu/ *modal v.* 应该 (45)
outer space 外层空间 (90)
oxygen /ˈɑːksɪdʒən/; /ˈɒksɪdʒən/ *n.*氧气 (39)
ozone layer /ˈəʊzəʊn ˈleɪə(r)/ 臭氧层 (39)

P

package /ˈpækɪdʒ/ *n.*一包,一袋,一盒 (54)
*v.*将……包装好
pain /peɪn/ *n.*疼,痛,痛苦 (29)
paint /peɪnt/ *n.*油漆;油漆涂层 (105)
*v.*在……刷油漆;用颜料画
palace /ˈpæləs/ *n.*王宫,宫殿 (106)
paragraph /ˈpærəgræf/; /ˈpærəgrɑːf/
*n.*段;段落 (13)
path /pæθ/; /pɑːθ/ *n.*道路;途径 (47)
peacock /ˈpiːkɑːk/; /ˈpiːkɒk/ *n.*雄孔雀 (68)
percent /pə(r)ˈsent/ *n.*百分之…… (14)
perhaps /pə(r)ˈhæps/ *adv.*可能,大概 (38)
period /ˈpɪəriəd/ *n.*一段时间,时期 (21)
per /pə(r)/ *prep.*每,每一 (47)
phrase /freɪz/ *n.*短语,词组 (22)
planet /ˈplænɪt/ *n.*行星 (34)
planter /ˈplæntə(r)/; /ˈplɑːntə(r)/ *n.*种植园主 (49)
plastic /ˈplæstɪk/ *adj.*塑料的 (43)
pleased /pliːzd/ *adj.*高兴的 (6)
plenty /ˈplenti/ *pron.*大量,众多,充足 (26)
*n.*充足,大量
plenty of 大量的 (26)
policy /ˈpɑːləsi/; /ˈpɒləsi/ *n.*政策,方针 (11)
pollute /pəˈluːt/ *v.*污染 (28)
population /ˌpɑːpjuˈleɪʃn/; /ˌpɒpjuˈleɪʃn/
*n.*人口,人数 (11)
position /pəˈzɪʃn/ *n.* 位置;方位 (61)
positive /ˈpɑːzətɪv/; /ˈpɒzətɪv/ *adj.*正面的; 乐观的 (67)
pour /pɔː(r)/ *v.*倒出;倾泻;不断流出 (27)
powerful /ˈpaʊə(r)fl/ *adj.*强大的; 有权势的;有影响力的 (61)
praise /preɪz/ *v.*& *n.*表扬,赞扬 (65)
preview /ˈpriːvjuː/ *v.*预习;预告 (75)
pride /praɪd/ *n.*骄傲,自豪 (68)

primary /ˈpraɪmeri/；/ˈpraɪməri/ *adj.*小学教育的；主要的；最初的 (23)
print /prɪnt/ *v.*印刷 (31)
prison /ˈprɪzn/ *n.*监狱 (106)
prisoner /ˈprɪznə(r)/ *n.*囚犯；俘虏 (106)
probably /ˈprɑːbəbli/；/ˈprɒbəbli/ *adv.*很可能，大概 (9)
process /ˈprɑːses/；/ˈprəʊses/ *n.*步骤，过程 *v.* 加工，处理 (47)
produce /prəˈduːs/；/prəˈdjuːs/ *v.*生产，制造 (29)
product /ˈprɑːdʌkt/；/ˈprɒdʌkt/ *n.*产品，制品 (54)
program /ˈprəʊgræm/ *n.*计划，方案；节目 (19)
progress /ˈprɑːgres/；/ˈprəʊgres/ *n.*进步 *v.*进展；逐步发展 (6)
project /ˈprɑːdʒekt/；/ˈprɒdʒekt/ *n.*专题研究；项目；方案 (23)
pronounce /prəˈnaʊns/ *v.*发音，读(音) (72)
pronunciation /prəˌnʌnsɪˈeɪʃn/ *n.*发音 (69)
properly /ˈprɑːpərli/；/ˈprɒpəli/ *adv.*正确地，恰当地 (102)
protection /prəˈtekʃn/ *n.*保护；防卫 (43)
prove /pruːv/ *v.*证明，证实 (97)
pull /pʊl/ *v.*拉；拽；扯；拖 (80)
punish /ˈpʌnɪʃ/ *v.*处罚，惩罚 (38)
puzzled /ˈpʌzld/ *adj.*困惑的 (66)

Q

quality /ˈkwɑːləti/；/ˈkwɒləti/ *n.*质量；品质；人品 (54)

R

radiation /ˌreɪdiˈeɪʃn/ *n.*放射，放射物 (39)
radio /ˈreɪdiəʊ/ *n.*收音机 (7)
rapid /ˈræpɪd/ *adj.*迅速的，快速的 (6)
rapidly /ˈræpɪdli/ *adv.*快速地，迅速地 (6)
reach /riːtʃ/ *v.*实现；达到；够得着；到达 (11)
real /ˈriːəl/ *adj.*真实的，实际存在的；真正的 (72)
realize /ˈriːəlaɪz/；/ˈriəlaɪz/ *v.*(**realise** BrE)意识到，领会；实现 (91)
recent /ˈriːsnt/ *adj.*近来的，最近的 (8)
recently /ˈriːsntli/ *adv.*不久前；最近 (31)
recycle /ˌriːˈsaɪkl/ *n.*回收利用；再利用 (43)
redesign /ˌriːdɪˈzaɪn/ *v.*重新设计 (85)
reduce /rɪˈduːs/；/rɪˈdjuːs/ *v.*减少；减轻 (36)
refer /rɪˈfɜː(r)/ to 提到，涉及，有关 (40)
reform /rɪˈfɔː(r)m/ *n.*改革，改良 (6)
reform and opening-up 改革开放 (6)
relative /ˈrelətɪv/ *n.*亲属，亲戚 (5)
remove /rɪˈmuːv/ *v.*去除，使消失；移开 (49)
renewable /rɪˈnuːəbl/；/rɪˈnjuːəbl/ *adj.*可更新的，可再生的 (47)
replace /rɪˈpleɪs/ *v.*代替，取代 (49)
report /rɪˈpɔː(r)t/ *n.*& *v.*报告，汇报 (5)
require /rɪˈkwaɪə(r)/ *v.*需要；要求 (47)
research /rɪˈsɜː(r)tʃ/ *n.*研究，调查，探索 (65)
resource /ˈriːsɔːrs/；/rɪˈsɔːs/ *n.*资源；财力 (41)
respect /rɪˈspekt/ *v.* 尊敬，尊重 (24)
retell /ˌriːˈtel/ *v.*复述，重新讲述 (72)
reuse /ˌriːˈjuːz/ *v.*再次使用；重复使用 (41)
review /rɪˈvjuː/ *v.*复习；回顾 *n.*复习；复查；评论 (75)
rise /raɪz/ *v.*上升；起床；升起 (39)
robot /ˈrəʊbɑːt/；/ˈrəʊbɒt/ *n.*机器人 (86)
rocket /ˈrɑːkɪt/；/ˈrɒkɪt/ *n.*火箭 (81)
Roman /ˈrəʊmən/ *adj.*古罗马的，古罗马帝国的 (93)
rooster /ˈruːstə(r)/ *n.*公鸡 (105)
root /ruːt/ *n.*起源，根源；根；词根 (59)
rope /rəʊp/ *n.*绳子，绳索 (4)
rubbish /ˈrʌbɪʃ/ *n.*垃圾；废弃物 (37)
rude /ruːd/ *adj.*无理的，粗鲁的 (38)
run out 用完，耗尽 (48)
Russia /ˈrʌʃə/ *n.*俄罗斯 (12)

S

sand /sænd/ *n.*沙 (35)
sandstorm /ˈsændstɔː(r)m/ *n.*沙暴 (35)
satellite /ˈsætəlaɪt/ *n.*卫星 (81)
satisfy /ˈsætɪsfaɪ/ *v.*使满意,使满足 (6)
screen /skriːn/ *n.*屏幕;银幕 (90)
secret /ˈsiːkrət/ *n.*秘密 (66)
secretary /ˈsekrətəri/; /ˈsekrətri/ *n.*秘书 (20)
see … off 为……送行;送别 (63)
sentence /ˈsentəns/ *n.*句子;判决,宣判 (32)
seriously /ˈsɪəriəsli/ *adv.*严重地;严肃地 (54)
servant /ˈsɜː(r)vənt/ *n.*仆人,佣人 (103)
several /ˈsevrəl/ *det.& pron.*几个,数个 (27)
shame /ʃeɪm/ *n.*羞耻,羞愧 (27)
shelter /ˈʃeltə(r)/ *n.*收容所;遮蔽物 (21)
shortage /ˈʃɔː(r)tɪdʒ/ *n.*不足;缺少;短缺 (41)
shut /ʃʌt/ *v.*关闭,关上 (4)
shut off 停止,关掉 (45)
significance /sɪgˈnɪfɪkəns/ *n.*重要性,意义 (98)
silence /ˈsaɪləns/ *n.*沉默;无声 (65)
*v.*使安静;压制
silly /ˈsɪli/ *adj.*愚蠢的,傻的 (85)
since /sɪns/ *prep.*自……以后,从……以来 (6)
*conj.*从……以后;既然,因为
situation /ˌsɪtʃuˈeɪʃn/ *n.*状况,形势,局面 (38)
sleepy /ˈsliːpi/ *adj.*想睡的,困倦的,瞌睡的 (71)
social /ˈsəʊʃl/ *adj.*社会的; 社交的 (13)
so far 到目前为止 (13)
soil /sɔɪl/ *n.*土壤;土地 (30)
solar /ˈsəʊlə(r)/ system 太阳系 (93)
sort /sɔː(r)t/ *n.*种类,类别;品种 (31)
*v.*整理;把……分类
source /sɔː(r)s/ *n.*来源,出处;起源;源头 (48)
spaceship /ˈspeɪsʃɪp/ *n.*宇宙飞船 (81)
spacesuit /ˈspeɪssuːt;ˈspeɪssjuːt/ *n.*航天服 (100)
spacewalk /ˈspeɪswɔːk/ *n.*太空漫步 (98)
Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/ *n.*西班牙语 (57)
*adj.*西班牙人的;西班牙的;西班牙语的
spare /speə(r)/ *adj.*空闲的;空余的 (7)
speaker /ˈspiːkə(r)/ *n.*讲(某种语言)的人;发言者 (59)
spelling /ˈspelɪŋ/ *n.*拼写;拼法 (69)
spit /spɪt/ *v.*吐,唾 (37)
steal /stiːl/ *v.*偷,窃取 (21)
steam /stiːm/ *n.*水蒸气,蒸汽;水汽 (48)
steel /stiːl/ *n.*钢,钢铁 (47)
stick to (doing) sth. 坚持(做)某事 (75)
storm /stɔː(r)m/ *n.*风暴,暴(风)雨 (93)
stranger /ˈstreɪndʒə(r)/ *n.*陌生人 (63)
straw /strɔː/ *n.*(收割后干燥的)禾秆,稻草 (47)
struggle /ˈstrʌgl/ *v.*奋斗;努力;争取 (105)
succeed in doing sth. 成功地做了某事 (6)
sunbathe /ˈsʌnbeɪð/ *v.*沐日光浴;晒太阳 (26)
sunlight /ˈsʌnlaɪt/ *n.*阳光,日光 (48)
sunshine /ˈsʌnʃaɪn/ *n.*阳光,日光 (26)
supply /səˈplaɪ/ *v.*提供,供应 (13)
*n.*供应量;补给;供应
support /səˈpɔː(r)t/ *v.*帮助,援助;支持 (21)
surf /sɜː(r)f/ *v.*(互联网上)冲浪,浏览 (26)
surround /səˈraʊnd/ *v.*围绕,环绕 (15)
system /ˈsɪstəm/ *n.*体系,方法,制度 (88)

T

the Summer Palace 颐和园 (106)
take a breath 吸一口气 (73)
take away 拿走 (39)
take measures to do sth.采取措施做某事 (13)
take place 发生,进行 (1)
tape /teɪp/ *n.*磁带,录音带 (72)
technology /tekˈnɑːlədʒi/; /tekˈnɒlədʒi/ *n.*技术 (47)
teenager /ˈtiːneɪdʒə(r)/ *n.*(13~19岁之间的)青少年 (26)
telegram /ˈtelɪgræm/ *n.*电报;电文 (5)
telescope /ˈtelɪskəʊp/ *n.*望远镜 (100)
term /tɜː(r)m/ *n.*学期;词语;措辞 (18)
textbook /ˈtekstbʊk/ *n.*教科书,课本 (73)

thanks to 幸亏,由于 (13)
the greenhouse effect 温室效应 (39)
thirsty /ˈθɜː(r)sti/ *adj.*缺水的;(口)渴的 (41)
thought /θɔːt/ *n.*想法,看法,主意 (85)
throughout /θruːˈaʊt/ *prep.*遍及;贯穿 (55)
thumb /θʌm/ *n.*拇指 (63)
tiny /ˈtaɪni/ *adj.*极小的,微小的 (101)
tonight /təˈnaɪt/ *adv.*在今晚 (57)
toothpaste /ˈtuːθpeɪst/ *n.*牙膏 (74)
totally /ˈtəʊtəli/ *adv.*完全,全部地,整个地 (70)
tourism /ˈtʊ(ə)rɪzəm;ˈtɔːrɪzəm/ *n.*旅游业;观光 (60)
tourist /ˈtʊrɪst/; /ˈtʊərɪst/ *n.*旅游者;游客 (60)
tower /ˈtaʊə(r)/ *n.*塔 (106)
trader /ˈtreɪdə(r)/ *n.*商人,买卖人 (59)
training /ˈtreɪnɪŋ/ *n.*训练,培训 (19)
translate /trænsˈleɪt/ *v.*翻译 (75)
transportation /ˌtrænspɔː(r)ˈteɪʃn/ *n.*运输 (16)
treatment /ˈtriːtmənt/ *n.*疗法,治疗 (19)
twin /twɪn/ *adj.*双胞胎之一的 (58)
n. 双胞胎之一
typical /ˈtɪpɪkl/ *adj.*典型的,有代表性的 (66)

U

uncomfortable /ʌnˈkʌmftəbl/ *adj.*使人不舒服的;令人不舒适的 (31)
underline /ˌʌndə(r)ˈlaɪn/ *v.*在(词语等下)画线;画底线标出 (68)
universe /ˈjuːnɪvɜː(r)s/ *n.*宇宙 (92)
unpleasant /ʌnˈplezənt/ *adj.*令人不快的;不舒服的 (31)
untidy /ʌnˈtaɪdi/ *adj.*不整洁的,凌乱的 (38)
user /ˈjuːzə(r)/ *n.*使用者;用户 (37)

V

value /ˈvæljuː/ *v.*重视,珍视 (21)
n. 价值
various /ˈveriəs/; /ˈveəriəs/ *adj.*各种各样的;多姿多彩的 (5)
victory /ˈvɪktəri/ *n.*胜利 (66)
video /ˈvɪdiəʊ/ *n.*录像带;录像 (54)
villager /ˈvɪlɪdʒə(r)/ *n.*村民,乡下人 (28)
visitor /ˈvɪzɪtə(r)/ *n.*游客;来访者;参观者 (18)
vocabulary /vəˈkæbjələri/; /vəˈkæbjələri/ *n.* 词汇;词汇量 (107)
volleyball /ˈvɑːlibɔːl/; /ˈvɒlibɔːl/ *n.*排球 (26)
volunteer /ˌvɒlənˈtɪə(r)/ *n.*志愿者 (1)

W

waitress /ˈweɪtrəs/ *n.*女服务员 (105)
warn /wɔː(r)n/ *v.*警告,告诫 (103)
waste /weɪst/ *adj.*废弃的,丢弃的,无用的 (27)
*v.*浪费
wave /weɪv/ *n.*挥手;招手;海浪 (48)
*v.*招手;摆手
weigh /weɪ/ *v.*重,有……重 (93)
weight /we(ɪ)t/ *n.*重量;分量 (53)
whatever /wətˈevə(r)/; /wɒtˈevə(r)/ *pron.* 无论什么,不管什么;任何事物 (21)
wheel /wiːl/ *n.*轮,车轮,轮子 (47)
whenever /wenˈevə(r)/ *conj.*无论何时,在任何……的时候 (63)
widely /ˈwaɪdli/ *adv.*普通地;广泛地 (55)
wife /waɪf/ *n.*妻子,太太 (105)
wild /waɪld/ *adj.*野的,野生的 (37)
wisdom /ˈwɪzdəm/ *n.*智慧,精明 (68)
workplace /ˈwɜː(r)kpleɪs/ *n.*工作场所 (101)
worldwide /ˈwɜː(r)ldwaɪd/ *adv.*全世界,世界各地 (48)
worse /wɜː(r)s/ *adj.*更差的,更糟的 (13)
*adv.*更差,更糟
worst /wɜː(r)st/ *adj.*最差的,最糟的 (38)
wound /wuːnd/ *n.*创伤;伤口 (20)
*v.*伤,伤害

Y

yet /jet/ *adv.*还,仍 (9)

Attached Word List 附表单词

（注：本词汇表仅供参阅，不要求学生掌握）

accurately /ˈækjərətli/ *adv.* 正确无误地；精确地
approach /əˈprəʊtʃ/ *n.* 方式，方法；接近
attributive /əˈtrɪbjətɪv/ clause 定语从句
axis /ˈæksɪs/ *n.* 坐标轴；轴心
belong /bɪˈlɔːŋ/；/bɪˈlɒŋ/ *v.* 属于
celestial /səˈlestʃl/；/səˈlestiəl/ body 天体
combine /kəmˈbaɪn/ *v.* 合并；组合，联合
committee /kəˈmɪti/ *n.* 委员会
compound /ˈkɑːmpaʊnd/；/ˈkɒmpaʊnd/ *n.* 复合词
debate /dɪˈbeɪt/ *n.* 辩论，争论，讨论
derivation /ˌderɪˈveɪʃn/ *n.* 派生词
figure /ˈfɪgə(r)/ out 弄清楚，弄明白
formation /fɔː(r)ˈmeɪʃn/ *n.* 组成，形成
fund /fʌnd/ *n.* 基金，专款
idiom /ˈɪdɪəm/ *n.* 习语，成语
indefinite /ɪnˈdefɪnət/ pronoun 不定代词
iron /ˈaɪə(r)n/ *n.* 铁
medium /ˈmiːdiəm/ *adj.* 中等的
pale /peɪl/ *adj.* 浅色的；苍白的
passive /ˈpæsɪv/ *adj.* 被动的
pause /pɔːz/ *n.* 停顿，停顿的时间
v. 暂停，停顿
possibility /ˌpɑːsəˈbɪləti/；/ˌpɒsəˈbɪləti/ *n.* 可能，可能性
relate /rɪˈleɪt/ *v.* 有关；涉及
roll /rəʊl/ *v.* 滚动；翻转
roller /ˈrəʊlə(r)/ skating 滑旱冰
separate /ˈseprət/ *v.* （使）分开，分离
state /steɪt/ *v.* 陈述，说明，声明
tense /tens/ *n.* （动词的）时，时态

English Names 英文姓名表

Male Names 男名

Alexander /ˌælɪgˈzɑːndə(r)/ 亚历山大
Elliot /ˈelɪət/ 埃利奥特
Buzz /bʌz/ 巴兹
Graham /ˈgreɪəm/ 格雷厄姆
Guglielmo /gʊlɪˈelməʊ/ 古尔亚莫
Karl /kɑːl/ 卡尔
Kris /krɪs/ 克里斯
Martin /ˈmɑːrtn/ 马丁
Neil /niːl/ 尼尔
Orville /ˈɔːvɪl/ 奥维尔
Robert /ˈrɒbət/ 罗伯特
Thomas /ˈtɒməs/ 托马斯
Tim /tɪm/ 帝姆
Walt /wɔːlt/ 沃尔特
Wilbur /ˈwɪlbə(r)/ 威尔伯

Female Names 女名

Anna /ˈænə/ 安娜
Rita /ˈriːtə/ 丽塔
Sue /suː/；/sjuː/ 苏

Family Names 姓

Aldrin /ˈældrɪn/ 奥尔德林
Armstrong /ˈɑːmstrɒŋ/ 阿姆斯特朗
Baird /ˈbeɪəd/ 贝尔德
Bell /bel/ 贝尔
Benz /benz/ 本茨
Burns /bɜːnz/ 伯恩斯（彭斯）
Disney /ˈdɪzni/ 迪斯尼
Edison /ˈedɪsn/ 爱迪生
Marconi /mɑːˈkəʊni/ 马克尼
Wilson /ˈwɪlsn/ 威尔逊
Wright /raɪt/ 莱特

Names of Places 地名表

Bulgaria /bʌlˈgeriə/；/bʌlˈgeəriə/ 保加利亚
Fairmont /ˈfeɪəmɔːnt/ 费尔蒙特
Scotland /ˈskɑːtlənd/ 苏格兰
Singapore /ˈsɪŋəpɔː(r)/；/ˈsɪŋgəpɔː(r)/ 新加坡
Sweden /ˈswiːdn/ 瑞典

Irregular Verbs 不规则动词表

Verb 动词	Past Tense 过去式	Past Participle 过去分词
be(am, is, are)	was /wɒz/, were /wɜː(r)/	been /biːn/
bear	bore /bɔː(r)/	borne/bɔː(r)n/
beat	beat /biːt/	beaten /ˈbiːtn/
become	became /bɪˈkeɪm/	become /bɪˈkʌm/
begin	began /bɪˈgæn/	begun /bɪˈgʌn/
blow	blew /bluː/	blown /bləʊn/
break	broke /brəʊk/	broken /ˈbrəʊkən/
bring	brought /brɔːt/	brought /brɔːt/
build	built /bɪlt/	built /bɪlt/
burn	burnt /bɜː(r)nt/, burned /bɜː(r)nd/	burnt /bɜː(r)nt/, burned /bɜː(r)nd/
buy	bought /bɔːt/	bought /bɔːt/
can	could /kʊd/	—
catch	caught /kɔːt/	caught /kɔːt/
choose	chose /tʃəʊz/	chosen /ˈtʃəʊzn/
come	came /keɪm/	come /kʌm/
cost	cost /kɔːst/ /kɒst/	cost /kɒst/
cut	cut /kʌt/	cut /kʌt/
dig	dug /dʌg/	dug /dʌg/
do	did /dɪd/	done /dʌn/
draw	drew /druː/	drawn /drɔːn/
dream	dreamt/dremt/, dreamed /driːmd/	dreamt /dremt/, dreamed /driːmd/
drink	drank /dræŋk/	drunk /drʌŋk/
drive	drove /drəʊv/	driven /ˈdrɪvn/
eat	ate /eɪt/	eaten /ˈiːtn/
fall	fell /fel/	fallen /ˈfɔːlən/
feed	fed /fed/	fed /fed/
feel	felt /felt/	felt /felt/
fight	fought /fɔːt/	fought /fɔːt/
find	found /faʊnd/	found /faʊnd/
fly	flew /fluː/	flown /fləʊn/
forget	forgot /fərˈgɑːt/ /fəˈgɒt/	forgotten /fərˈgɑːtn/ /fəˈgɒtn/
get	got /gɑːt//gɒt/	got /gɒt/

Verb 动词	Past Tense 过去式	Past Participle 过去分词
give	gave /geɪv/	given /ˈgɪvn/
go	went /went/	gone /gɒn/
grow	grew /gruː/	grown /grəʊn/
hang	hung /hʌŋ/	hung /hʌŋ/
have(has)	had /hæd/	had /hæd/
hear	heard /hɜː(r)d/	heard /hɜː(r)d/
hide	hid /hɪd/	hidden /ˈhɪdn/
hold	held /held/	held /held/
hurt	hurt /hɜː(r)t/	hurt /hɜː(r)t/
keep	kept /kept/	kept /kept/
know	knew /nuː/ /njuː/	known /nəʊn/
learn	learnt/lɜː(r)nt/, learned /ˈlɜː(r)nd/	learnt/lɜː(r)nt/, learned /ˈlɜː(r)nd/
leave	left /left/	left /left/
lend	lent /lent/	lent /lent/
let	let /let/	let /let/
lie	lay /leɪ/	lain /leɪn/
light	lit /lɪt/, lighted /ˈlaɪtɪd/	lit /lɪt/, lighted /ˈlaɪtɪd/
lose	lost /lɒst/	lost /lɒst/
make	made /meɪd/	made /meɪd/
may	might /maɪt/	—
mean	meant /ment/	meant /ment/
meet	met /met/	met /met/
mistake	mistook /mɪˈstʊk/	mistaken /mɪˈsteɪkən/
must	must /mʌst/	—
pay	paid /peɪd/	paid /peɪd/
put	put /pʊt/	put /pʊt/
read	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode /rəʊd/	ridden /ˈrɪdn/
ring	rang /ræŋ/	rung /rʌŋ/
rise	rose /rəʊz/	risen /ˈrɪzn/
run	ran /ræn/	run /rʌn/
say	said /sed/	said /sed/
see	saw /sɔː/	seen /siːn/
sell	sold /səʊld/	sold /səʊld/
send	sent /sent/	sent /sent/
set	set /set/	set /set/
shake	shook /ʃʊk/	shaken /ˈʃeɪkən/

Verb 动词	Past Tense 过去式	Past Participle 过去分词
shall	should /ʃʊd/	—
shine	shone /ʃɒn/	shone /ʃɒn/
show	showed /ʃəʊd/	shown /ʃəʊn/
shut	shut /ʃʌt/	shut /ʃʌt/
sing	sang /sæŋ/	sung /sʌŋ/
sit	sat /sæt/	sat /sæt/
sleep	slept /slept/	slept /slept/
smell	smelt /smelt/, smelled /smeld/	smelt/smelt/, smelled /smeld/
speak	spoke /spəʊk/	spoken /ˈspəʊkən/
speed	sped /sped/	sped /sped/
spell	spelt/spelt/, spelled /speld/	spelt /spelt/, spelled /speld/
spend	spent /spent/	spent /spent/
spread	spread /spred/	spread /spred/
stand	stood /stʊd/	stood /stʊd/
steal	stole /stəʊl/	stolen /ˈstəʊlən/
stick	stuck /stʌk/	stuck /stʌk/
swim	swam /swæm/	swum /swʌm/
take	took /tʊk/	taken /ˈteɪkən/
teach	taught /tɔːt/	taught /tɔːt/
tell	told /təʊld/	told /təʊld/
think	thought /θɔːt/	thought /θɔːt/
throw	threw /θruː/	thrown /θrəʊn/
understand	understood /ˌʌndə(r)ˈstʊd/	understood /ˌʌndə(r)ˈstʊd/
wake	woke /wəʊk/	woken /ˈwəʊkən/
wear	wore /wɔː(r)/	worn /wɔː(r)n/
will	would /wʊd/	—
win	won /wʌn/	won /wʌn/
write	wrote /rəʊt/	written /ˈrɪtn/

后　记

本册教科书由北京市仁爱教育研究所依据教育部《义务教育英语课程标准(2011年版)》编写，经教育部基础教育课程教材专家工作委员会2013年审查一次性通过。

自教育部2011年7月下发《义务教育英语课程标准》(送审稿)之日起，北京市仁爱教育研究所的数十位英语教材编写专家及近百位教材编写人员在加拿大主编Jim Greenlaw博士和中方主编王德春教授、副主编杨晓钰教授的带领下，对仁爱版初中英语教材进行了深入、细致的修订改编工作。

修订后的仁爱版初中英语教材更加注重培养学生的语感和良好的语音、语调基础，使他们形成用英语进行日常交际的思维和能力；注重培养学生良好的学习习惯，提高他们自主学习的能力；注重培养学生的观察、记忆、思维、想象和创造能力，促进心智和综合人文素养的全面发展。同时，仁爱版初中英语教材还注重培养学生的爱国主义精神及跨文化交际意识，为学生的进一步学习奠定良好的基础。

在教材修订的过程中，我们所有参与教材修订的专家、教授、编写、审校人员每天坚持工作10个小时以上(包括兔年大年三十至龙年正月初九以及所有的节假日和公休日)，一直连续坚持工作到教材送审截止日期的最后一天下午。**我们执着的追求最后终于获得了丰厚的回报**——在2012年1月31日开始的第一阶段送审(七上—七下)和2012年12月31日开始的第二阶段送审(八上—九下)的过程中，仁爱版初中英语教材均分别于2012年3月17日和2013年3月2日率先一次性通过教育部基础教育课程教材专家工作委员会审查(唯一一套无需参加2012年4月9日和2013年4月8日的再次会议复核审查)，且2012年3月17日第一阶段和2013年3月2日第二阶段审查通过的唯一结论要求均是：请参照修改意见自行修改。

仁爱版初中英语教材在编写及数百次的修改、审校过程中得到了全国诸多英语教育专家、教研员和优秀一线教师的指导与帮助，其中有：王晓、李琨、陈叶瑶、陈明、宗泽、郭俊丽(按姓氏笔画排序)等同志。同时，仁爱版初中英语教材的每一次修改、审校还吸纳了很多教研员和一线教师的宝贵意见。在此，北京市仁爱教育研究所向他们表示诚挚的谢意！

由于时间的关系，教材中可能还存在不足及需要完善之处，衷心希望广大英语专家、教研员、一线教师、在校学生及学生家长等来电来函批评指正，以便下次修订时改正。

本教科书的绝大部分(99%以上)作品均为北京市仁爱教育研究所原创作品，极少部分(1%以下)选用的经典作品、图片由于无法与作者取得联系，特委托北京版权代理有限责任公司向权利人转付稿酬。请您与北京版权代理有限责任公司联系并领取稿酬。联系方式：(010)82357058/57/56

北京市仁爱教育研究所